

**Oracle® Database**  
XML C API Reference  
11g Release 2 (11.2)  
**E10770-02**

May 2010

Oracle Database XML C API Reference, 11g Release 2 (11.2)

E10770-02

Copyright © 2001, 2010, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Primary Author: Roza Leyderman

Contributors: Ian Macky, Vijay Medi

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this software or related documentation is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007). Oracle USA, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

This software is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications which may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use of this software. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software in dangerous applications.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

This software and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

---

---

# Contents

<b>Preface .....</b>	<b>xix</b>
Audience.....	xix
Documentation Accessibility .....	xix
Related Documents .....	xx
Conventions .....	xx
<b>What's New in the XML C APIs? .....</b>	<b>xxi</b>
New Features for Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2) .....	xxi
New Features for Oracle Database 11g Release 1 (11.1) .....	xxi
<b>1    Datatypes for C</b>	
<b>C Datatypes.....</b>	<b>1-2</b>
oracheck.....	1-3
oraerr.....	1-3
oraprop_id.....	1-3
oramemctx.....	1-3
oraprop .....	1-4
oraprop_t.....	1-4
oraprop_v.....	1-4
orastream.....	1-4
orastreamhdl.....	1-4
xmlcmphow .....	1-5
xmlctx.....	1-5
xmldfotype.....	1-5
xmldfsrct.....	1-5
xmlerr.....	1-6
xmlevctx.....	1-6
xmlevtype.....	1-6
xmlhasht .....	1-7
xmlistream.....	1-7
xmliter.....	1-8
xmlnodetype .....	1-8
xmlostream.....	1-9
xmlpoint.....	1-9

xmlrange.....	1-9
xmlsoapbind .....	1-10
xmlsoapcon .....	1-10
xmlsoapctx .....	1-10
xmlsoaprole.....	1-10
xmlshowbits .....	1-10
xmlurlacc .....	1-11
xmlurlhdl.....	1-11
xmlurlpart .....	1-11
xmlxptrloc .....	1-12
xmlxptrlocset.....	1-12
xmlxslobjtype.....	1-12
xmlxslmethod .....	1-12
xmlxvm .....	1-13
xmlxvmcomp .....	1-13
xmlxvmflags.....	1-13
xmlxvmobjtype.....	1-13
xpctx .....	1-14
xpexpr .....	1-14
xpobj.....	1-14
xsdctx .....	1-14
xslctx.....	1-14
xvmobj .....	1-14

## 2 Package Callback APIs for C

<b>Callback Methods .....</b>	<b>2-2</b>
XML_ACCESS_CLOSE_F() .....	2-2
XML_ACCESS_OPEN_F() .....	2-2
XML_ACCESS_READ_F() .....	2-3
XML_ALLOC_F().....	2-3
XML_ERRMSG_F() .....	2-4
XML_FREE_F() .....	2-4
XML_STREAM_CLOSE_F() .....	2-5
XML_STREAM_OPEN_F() .....	2-5
XML_STREAM_READ_F() .....	2-6
XML_STREAM_WRITE_F() .....	2-6

## 3 Package DOM APIs for C

<b>Attr Interface .....</b>	<b>3-2</b>
XmlDomGetAttrLocal().....	3-2
XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen() .....	3-3
XmlDomGetAttrName() .....	3-3
XmlDomGetAttrNameLen().....	3-4
XmlDomGetAttrPrefix().....	3-5
XmlDomGetAttrSpecified() .....	3-5
XmlDomGetAttrURI() .....	3-6
XmlDomGetAttrURILen() .....	3-6

XmlDomGetAttrValue()	3-7
XmlDomGetAttrValueLen()	3-7
XmlDomGetAttributeValueStream()	3-8
XmlDomGetOwnerElem()	3-9
XmlDomSetAttrValue()	3-9
XmlDomSetAttributeValueStream()	3-9
<b>CharacterData Interface</b>	3-11
XmlDomAppendData()	3-11
XmlDomDeleteData()	3-12
XmlDomGetCharData()	3-12
XmlDomGetCharDataLength()	3-13
XmlDomInsertData()	3-13
XmlDomReplaceData()	3-14
XmlDomSetCharData()	3-14
XmlDomSubstringData()	3-15
<b>Document Interface</b>	3-16
XmlDomCreateAttr()	3-17
XmlDomCreateAttrNS()	3-17
XmlDomCreateCDATA()	3-18
XmlDomCreateComment()	3-19
XmlDomCreateElem()	3-19
XmlDomCreateElemNS()	3-20
XmlDomCreateEntityRef()	3-21
XmlDomCreateFragment()	3-21
XmlDomCreatePI()	3-22
XmlDomCreateText()	3-22
XmlDomFreeString()	3-23
XmlDomGetBaseURI()	3-23
XmlDomGetDTD()	3-24
XmlDomGetDecl()	3-24
XmlDomGetDocElem()	3-25
XmlDomGetDocElemByID()	3-25
XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag()	3-26
XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS()	3-27
XmlDomGetLastError()	3-27
XmlDomGetSchema()	3-28
XmlDomImportNode()	3-28
XmlDomIsSchemaBased()	3-29
XmlDomSaveString()	3-29
XmlDomSaveString2()	3-30
XmlDomSetBaseURI()	3-30
XmlDomSetDTD()	3-31
XmlDomSetDocOrder()	3-31
XmlDomSetLastError()	3-32
XmlDomSync()	3-32
<b>DocumentType Interface</b>	3-33
XmlDomGetDTDEntities()	3-33

XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset()	3-33
XmlDomGetDTDName()	3-34
XmlDomGetDTDNotations()	3-34
XmlDomGetDTDPubID()	3-35
XmlDomGetDTDSysID()	3-35
<b>Element Interface</b>	3-36
XmlDomGetAttr()	3-36
XmlDomGetAttrNS()	3-37
XmlDomGetAttrNode()	3-37
XmlDomGetAttrNodeNS()	3-38
XmlDomGetChildrenByTag()	3-38
XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS()	3-39
XmlDomGetElemsByTag()	3-39
XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS()	3-40
XmlDomGetTag()	3-41
XmlDomHasAttr()	3-41
XmlDomHasAttrNS()	3-41
XmlDomRemoveAttr()	3-42
XmlDomRemoveAttrNS()	3-42
XmlDomRemoveAttrNode()	3-43
XmlDomSetAttr()	3-43
XmlDomSetAttrNS()	3-44
XmlDomSetAttrNode()	3-44
XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS()	3-45
<b>Entity Interface</b>	3-46
XmlDomGetEntityNotation()	3-46
XmlDomGetEntityPubID()	3-46
XmlDomGetEntitySysID()	3-47
XmlDomGetEntityType()	3-47
<b>NamedNodeMap Interface</b>	3-48
XmlDomGetNamedItem()	3-48
XmlDomGetNamedItemNS()	3-49
XmlDomGetNodeMapItem()	3-49
XmlDomGetNodeMapLength()	3-50
XmlDomRemoveNamedItem()	3-50
XmlDomRemoveNamedItemNS()	3-51
XmlDomSetNamedItem()	3-51
XmlDomSetNamedItemNS()	3-52
<b>Node Interface</b>	3-53
XmlDomAppendChild()	3-55
XmlDomCleanNode()	3-55
XmlDomCloneNode()	3-55
XmlDomFreeNode()	3-56
XmlDomGetAttrs()	3-56
XmlDomGetChildNodes()	3-57
XmlDomGetDefaultNS()	3-57
XmlDomGetFirstChild()	3-58

XmlDomGetFirstPfnsPair()	3-58
XmlDomGetLastChild()	3-59
XmlDomGetNextPfnsPair()	3-59
XmlDomGetNextSibling()	3-60
XmlDomGetNodeLocal()	3-60
XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen()	3-60
XmlDomGetnodeName()	3-61
XmlDomGetnodeNameLen()	3-62
XmlDomGetNodePrefix()	3-63
XmlDomGetNodeType()	3-63
XmlDomGetNodeURI()	3-64
XmlDomGetNodeURILen()	3-64
XmlDomGetnodeValue()	3-65
XmlDomGetnodeValueLen()	3-66
XmlDomGetnodeValueStream()	3-66
XmlDomGetOwnerDocument()	3-67
XmlDomGetParentNode()	3-67
XmlDomGetPrevSibling()	3-68
XmlDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream()	3-68
XmlDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream()	3-68
XmlDomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream()	3-69
XmlDomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream()	3-69
XmlDomGetSourceEntity()	3-70
XmlDomGetSourceLine()	3-70
XmlDomGetSourceLocation()	3-70
XmlDomHasAttrs()	3-71
XmlDomHasChildNodes()	3-71
XmlDomInsertBefore()	3-71
XmlDomNormalize()	3-72
XmlDomNumAttrs()	3-72
XmlDomNumChildNodes()	3-73
XmlDomPrefixToURI()	3-73
XmlDomRemoveChild()	3-74
XmlDomRenameNode()	3-74
XmlDomRenameNodeNS()	3-74
XmlDomReplaceChild()	3-75
XmlDomSetDefaultNS()	3-76
XmlDomSetNodePrefix()	3-76
XmlDomSetnodeValue()	3-76
XmlDomSetnodeValueLen()	3-77
XmlDomSetnodeValueStream()	3-77
XmlDomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream()	3-78
XmlDomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream()	3-78
XmlDomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream()	3-79
XmlDomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream()	3-79
XmlDomValidate()	3-79
<b>NodeList Interface</b>	<b>3-81</b>

XmlDomFreeNodeList()	3-81
XmlDomGetNodeListItem()	3-81
XmlDomGetNodeListLength()	3-82
<b>Notation Interface</b>	3-83
XmlDomGetNotationPubID()	3-83
XmlDomGetNotationSysID()	3-83
<b>ProcessingInstruction Interface</b>	3-84
XmlDomGetPIData()	3-84
XmlDomGetPITarget()	3-84
XmlDomSetPIData()	3-85
<b>Text Interface</b>	3-86
XmlDomSplitText()	3-86

## 4 Package Event APIs for C

<b>Event Interface</b>	4-2
XmlEvCleanPPCtx()	4-5
XmlEvCreatePPCtx()	4-6
XmlEvCreateSVCtx()	4-7
XmlEvDestroyPPCtx()	4-8
XmlEvDestroySVCtx()	4-8
XmlEvGetAttrCount()	4-9
XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody()	4-9
XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0()	4-9
XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount()	4-10
XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName()	4-10
XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName0()	4-10
XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName()	4-11
XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0()	4-11
XmlEvGetAttrDeclName()	4-11
XmlEvGetAttrDeclName0()	4-12
XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix()	4-12
XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0()	4-13
XmlEvGetAttrID()	4-13
XmlEvGetAttrLocalName()	4-13
XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0()	4-14
XmlEvGetAttrName()	4-14
XmlEvGetAttrName0()	4-14
XmlEvGetAttrPrefix()	4-15
XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0()	4-15
XmlEvGetAttrURI()	4-16
XmlEvGetAttrURI0()	4-16
XmlEvGetAttrUriID()	4-16
XmlEvGetAttrValue()	4-17
XmlEvGetAttrValue0()	4-17
XmlEvGetElDeclContent()	4-17
XmlEvGetElDeclContent0()	4-18
XmlEvGetEncoding()	4-18

XmlEvGetError()	4-18
XmlEvGetName()	4-19
XmlEvGetName0()	4-19
XmlEvGetLocalName()	4-20
XmlEvGetLocalName0()	4-20
XmlEvGetLocation()	4-21
XmlEvGetPIData()	4-21
XmlEvGetPIData0()	4-21
XmlEvGetPITarget()	4-22
XmlEvGetPITarget0()	4-22
XmlEvGetPEIsGen()	4-22
XmlEvGetPERepl()	4-23
XmlEvGetPERepl0()	4-23
XmlEvGetPrefix()	4-23
XmlEvGetPrefix0()	4-24
XmlEvGetPubId()	4-24
XmlEvGetPubId0()	4-25
XmlEvGetSysId()	4-25
XmlEvGetSysId0()	4-25
XmlEvGetTagID()	4-26
XmlEvGetTagUriID()	4-26
XmlEvGetText()	4-26
XmlEvGetText0()	4-27
XmlEvGetUENdata()	4-28
XmlEvGetUENdata0()	4-28
XmlEvGetURI()	4-28
XmlEvGetURI0()	4-29
XmlEvGetVersion()	4-29
XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified()	4-29
XmlEvIsNamespaceAttr()	4-30
XmlEvIsStandalone()	4-30
XmlEvNext()	4-30
XmlEvNextTag()	4-31
XmlEvLoadPPDoc()	4-31
XmlEvSchemaValidate()	4-31

## 5 Package Orastream APIs for C

<b>OraStream Interfaces</b>	5-2
OraStreamClose()	5-2
OraStreamHandle()	5-2
OraStreamInit()	5-3
OraStreamIsOpen()	5-4
OraStreamOpen()	5-4
OraStreamRead()	5-5
OraStreamReadable()	5-5
OraStreamReadChar()	5-6
OraStreamSid()	5-6

OraStreamTerm()	5-7
OraStreamWrite()	5-7
OraStreamWritable()	5-7
OraStreamWriteChar()	5-8

## 6 Package Range APIs for C

<b>DocumentRange Interface</b>	6-2
XmlDomCreateRange()	6-2
<b>Range Interface</b>	6-3
XmlDomRangeClone()	6-3
XmlDomRangeCloneContents()	6-4
XmlDomRangeCollapse()	6-4
XmlDomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints()	6-5
XmlDomRangeDeleteContents()	6-5
XmlDomRangeDetach()	6-5
XmlDomRangeExtractContents()	6-6
XmlDomRangeGetCollapsed()	6-6
XmlDomRangeGetCommonAncestor()	6-7
XmlDomRangeGetDetached()	6-7
XmlDomRangeGetEndContainer()	6-7
XmlDomRangeGetEndOffset()	6-8
XmlDomRangeGetStartContainer()	6-8
XmlDomRangeGetStartOffset()	6-9
XmlDomRangeIsConsistent()	6-9
XmlDomRangeSelectNode()	6-9
XmlDomRangeSelectNodeContents()	6-10
XmlDomRangeSetEnd()	6-10
XmlDomRangeSetEndBefore()	6-11
XmlDomRangeSetStart()	6-11
XmlDomRangeSetStartAfter()	6-12
XmlDomRangeSetStartBefore()	6-12

## 7 Package SAX APIs for C

<b>SAX Interface</b>	7-2
XmlSaxAttributeDecl()	7-2
XmlSaxCDATA()	7-3
XmlSaxCharacters()	7-3
XmlSaxComment()	7-4
XmlSaxElementDecl()	7-4
XmlSaxEndDocument()	7-5
XmlSaxEndElement()	7-5
XmlSaxNotationDecl()	7-5
XmlSaxPI()	7-6
XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl()	7-6
XmlSaxStartDocument()	7-7
XmlSaxStartElement()	7-7
XmlSaxStartElementNS()	7-8

XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl()	7-8
XmlSaxWhitespace()	7-9
XmlSaxXmlDecl()	7-9

## **8 Package Schema APIs for C**

<b>Schema Interface</b>	<b>8-2</b>
XmlSchemaClean()	8-2
XmlSchemaCreate()	8-2
XmlSchemaDestroy()	8-3
XmlSchemaErrorWhere()	8-3
XmlSchemaLoad()	8-4
XmlSchemaLoadedList()	8-4
XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler()	8-5
XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions()	8-5
XmlSchemaTargetNamespace()	8-6
XmlSchemaUnload()	8-6
XmlSchemaValidate()	8-7
XmlSchemaVersion()	8-7

## **9 Package SOAP APIs for C**

<b>Package SOAP Interfaces</b>	<b>9-2</b>
XmlSoapAddBodyElement()	9-3
XmlSoapAddFaultReason()	9-3
XmlSoapAddFaultSubDetail()	9-4
XmlSoapAddHeaderElement()	9-4
XmlSoapCall()	9-5
XmlSoapCreateConnection()	9-5
XmlSoapCreateCtx()	9-6
XmlSoapCreateMsg()	9-7
XmlSoapDestroyConnection()	9-8
XmlSoapDestroyCtx()	9-8
XmlSoapDestroyMsg()	9-8
XmlSoapError()	9-9
XmlSoapGetBody()	9-9
XmlSoapGetBodyElement()	9-10
XmlSoapGetEnvelope()	9-10
XmlSoapGetFault()	9-11
XmlSoapGetHeader()	9-11
XmlSoapGetHeaderElement()	9-12
XmlSoapGetMustUnderstand()	9-12
XmlSoapGetReasonLang()	9-13
XmlSoapGetReasonNum()	9-13
XmlSoapGetRelay()	9-14
XmlSoapGetRole()	9-14
XmlSoapHasFault()	9-15
XmlSoapSetFault()	9-15

XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand()	9-16
XmlSoapSetRelay()	9-16
XmlSoapSetRole()	9-17

## **10 Package Traversal APIs for C**

<b>DocumentTraversal Interface</b>	10-2
XmlDomCreateNodeIter()	10-2
XmlDomCreateTreeWalker()	10-3
<b>NodeFilter Interface</b>	10-4
XMLDOM_ACCEPT_NODE_F()	10-4
<b>NodeIterator Interface</b>	10-5
XmlDomIterDetach()	10-5
XmlDomIterNextNode()	10-5
XmlDomIterPrevNode()	10-6
<b>TreeWalker Interface</b>	10-7
XmlDomWalkerFirstChild()	10-7
XmlDomWalkerGetCurrentNode()	10-7
XmlDomWalkerGetRoot()	10-8
XmlDomWalkerLastChild()	10-8
XmlDomWalkerNextNode()	10-9
XmlDomWalkerNextSibling()	10-9
XmlDomWalkerParentNode()	10-10
XmlDomWalkerPrevNode()	10-10
XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling()	10-11
XmlDomWalkerSetCurrentNode()	10-11
XmlDomWalkerSetRoot()	10-12

## **11 Package XML APIs for C**

<b>XML Interface</b>	11-2
XmlAccess()	11-2
XmlCreate()	11-3
XmlCreateDTD()	11-5
XmlCreateDocument()	11-5
XmlDestroy()	11-6
XmlDiff()	11-6
XmlFreeDocument()	11-7
XmlGetEncoding()	11-8
XmlHasFeature()	11-8
XmlIsSimple()	11-9
XmlIsUnicode()	11-9
XmlLoadDom()	11-9
XmlLoadSax()	11-11
XmlLoadSaxVA()	11-11
XmlSaveDom()	11-12
XmlVersion()	11-13

## **12 Package XmlDiff APIs for C**

<b>XmlDiff Interface .....</b>	12-2
XmlDiff().....	12-2
XmlHash() .....	12-3
XmlPatch().....	12-4

## **13 Package XPath APIs for C**

<b>XPath Interface.....</b>	13-2
XmlXPathCreateCtx() .....	13-2
XmlXPathDestroyCtx().....	13-2
XmlXPathEval() .....	13-3
XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean() .....	13-3
XmlXPathGetObjectFragment() .....	13-3
XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode() .....	13-4
XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum() .....	13-4
XmlXPathGetObjectNumber() .....	13-5
XmlXPathGetObjectString().....	13-5
XmlXPathGetObjectType().....	13-5
XmlXPathParse() .....	13-6

## **14 Package XPointer APIs for C**

<b>XPointer Interface.....</b>	14-2
XmlXPointerEval() .....	14-2
<b>XPtrLoc Interface .....</b>	14-3
XmlXPtrLocGetNode() .....	14-3
XmlXPtrLocGetPoint().....	14-3
XmlXPtrLocGetRange() .....	14-3
XmlXPtrLocGetType() .....	14-4
XmlXPtrLocToString() .....	14-4
<b>XPtrLocSet Interface .....</b>	14-5
XmlXPtrLocSetFree() .....	14-5
XmlXPtrLocSetGetItem().....	14-5
XmlXPtrLocSetGetLength() .....	14-5

## **15 Package XSLT APIs for C**

<b>XSLT Interface.....</b>	15-2
XmlXslCreate() .....	15-2
XmlXslDestroy() .....	15-3
XmlXslGetBaseURI().....	15-3
XmlXslGetOutput() .....	15-3
XmlXslGetStylesheetDom() .....	15-3
XmlXslGetTextParam().....	15-4
XmlXslProcess() .....	15-4
XmlXslResetAllParams() .....	15-5
XmlXslSetOutputDom() .....	15-5

XmlXslSetOutputEncoding()	15-5
XmlXslSetOutputMethod()	15-6
XmlXslSetOutputSax()	15-6
XmlXslSetOutputStream()	15-6
XmlXslSetTextParam()	15-7

## 16 Package XSLTVM APIs for C

<b>Using XSLTVM</b>	16-2
<b>XSLTC Interface</b>	16-3
XmlXvmCompileBuffer()	16-3
XmlXvmCompileDom()	16-4
XmlXvmCompileFile()	16-4
XmlXvmCompileURI()	16-5
XmlXvmCompileXPath()	16-6
XmlXvmCreateComp()	16-6
XmlXvmDestroyComp()	16-6
XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength()	16-7
<b>XSLTVM Interface</b>	16-8
XMLXVM_DEBUG_F()	16-9
XmlXvmCreate()	16-9
XmlXvmDestroy()	16-10
XmlXvmEvaluateXPath()	16-10
XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean()	16-10
XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode()	16-11
XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum()	16-11
XmlXvmGetObjectNumber()	16-11
XmlXvmGetObjectString()	16-12
XmlXvmGetObjectType()	16-12
XmlXvmGetOutputDom()	16-13
XmlXvmResetParams()	16-13
XmlXvmSetBaseURI()	16-13
XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer()	16-14
XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile()	16-14
XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI()	16-14
XmlXvmSetDebugFunc()	16-15
XmlXvmSetOutputDom()	16-15
XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding()	16-16
XmlXvmSetOutputSax()	16-16
XmlXvmSetOutputStream()	16-17
XmlXvmSetTextParam()	16-17
XmlXvmTransformBuffer()	16-17
XmlXvmTransformDom()	16-18
XmlXvmTransformFile()	16-18
XmlXvmTransformURI()	16-19

## A Mapping of APIs used before Oracle Database 10g Release 1

<b>C Package Changes</b>	A-1
--------------------------	-----

Initializing and Parsing Sequence Changes .....	A-1
Datatype Mapping between oraxml and xml Packages.....	A-3
Method Mapping between oraxml and xml Packages .....	A-4

## **Index**



## List of Tables

1–1	Summary of C Datatypes.....	1-2
2–1	Summary of Callback Methods.....	2-2
3–1	Summary of Attr Methods; DOM Package .....	3-2
3–2	Summary of CharacterData Method; DOM Package .....	3-11
3–3	Summary of Document Methods; DOM Package.....	3-16
3–4	Summary of DocumentType Methods; DOM Package.....	3-33
3–5	Summary of Element Methods; DOM Package.....	3-36
3–6	Summary of Entity Methods; DOM Package.....	3-46
3–7	Summary of NamedNodeMap Methods; DOM Package .....	3-48
3–8	Summary of Node Methods; DOM Package .....	3-53
3–9	Summary of NodeList Methods; DOM Package .....	3-81
3–10	Summary of NodeList Methods; DOM Package .....	3-83
3–11	Summary of ProcessingInstruction Methods; DOM Package .....	3-84
3–12	Summary of Text Methods; DOM Package.....	3-86
4–1	Summary of Event Methods.....	4-2
5–1	Orastream Error Codes .....	5-1
5–2	Summary of OraStream Methods; Package Orastream .....	5-2
6–1	Summary of DocumentRange Methods; Package Range.....	6-2
6–2	Summary of Range Methods; Package Range .....	6-3
7–1	Summary of SAX Methods .....	7-2
8–1	Summary of Schema Methods .....	8-2
9–1	Summary of SOAP Package Interfaces .....	9-2
10–1	Summary of DocumentTraversal Methods; Traversal Package.....	10-2
10–2	Summary of NodeFileter Methods; Traversal Package.....	10-4
10–3	Summary of NodeIterator Methods; Package Traversal.....	10-5
10–4	Summary of TreeWalker Methods; Traversal Package .....	10-7
11–1	Summary of XML Methods .....	11-2
12–1	Summary of XmlDiff Methods.....	12-2
13–1	Summary of XPath Methods .....	13-2
14–1	Summary of XPointer Methods; Package XPointer .....	14-2
14–2	Summary of XPtrLoc Methods; Package XPointer .....	14-3
14–3	Summary of XPtrLocSet Methods; Package XPointer .....	14-5
15–1	Summary of XSLT Methods .....	15-2
16–1	Summary of XSLTC Methods; XSLTVM Package.....	16-3
16–2	Summary of XSLTVM Methods; Package XSLTVM.....	16-8
A–1	Datatypes Supported by oraxml Package versus xml Package .....	A-3
A–2	Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package .....	A-4



---

---

# Preface

The *Oracle Database XML C API Reference* describes Oracle XML Developer's Kits (XDK) and Oracle XML DB APIs for the C programming language. It primarily lists the syntax of functions, methods, and procedures associated with these APIs.

## Audience

*Oracle Database XML C API Reference* is intended for developers who are building XML applications in Oracle.

To use this document, you need a basic understanding of object-oriented programming concepts, familiarity with Structured Query Language (SQL), and working knowledge of application development using the C programming language.

## Documentation Accessibility

Our goal is to make Oracle products, services, and supporting documentation accessible to all users, including users that are disabled. To that end, our documentation includes features that make information available to users of assistive technology. This documentation is available in HTML format, and contains markup to facilitate access by the disabled community. Accessibility standards will continue to evolve over time, and Oracle is actively engaged with other market-leading technology vendors to address technical obstacles so that our documentation can be accessible to all of our customers. For more information, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program Web site at <http://www.oracle.com/accessibility/>.

### Accessibility of Code Examples in Documentation

Screen readers may not always correctly read the code examples in this document. The conventions for writing code require that closing braces should appear on an otherwise empty line; however, some screen readers may not always read a line of text that consists solely of a bracket or brace.

### Accessibility of Links to External Web Sites in Documentation

This documentation may contain links to Web sites of other companies or organizations that Oracle does not own or control. Oracle neither evaluates nor makes any representations regarding the accessibility of these Web sites.

### Deaf/Hard of Hearing Access to Oracle Support Services

To reach Oracle Support Services, use a telecommunications relay service (TRS) to call Oracle Support at 1.800.223.1711. An Oracle Support Services engineer will handle technical issues and provide customer support according to the Oracle service request

process. Information about TRS is available at <http://www.fcc.gov/cgb/consumerfacts/trs.html>, and a list of phone numbers is available at <http://www.fcc.gov/cgb/dro/trsphonebk.html>.

## Related Documents

For more information, see the following documents in the Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2) documentation set:

- *Oracle Database Concepts*
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*
- *Oracle Database Object-Relational Developer's Guide*
- *Oracle Database New Features Guide*
- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*
- *Oracle Database Sample Schemas*

## Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

Convention	Meaning
<b>boldface</b>	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.
<i>italic</i>	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
<code>monospace</code>	Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.

---

---

# What's New in the XML C APIs?

This section describes new features in *Oracle Database XML C API Reference* and supplies pointers to additional information.

## New Features for Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2)

The following features are new to the Oracle Database 11g Release 2:

### Orastream Interface

The orastream package handles large (over 64K) text and binary nodes in XML documents.

Information about this feature is in Chapter [Chapter 5, "Package Orastream APIs for C"](#). Additionally, these new datatypes have been documented in [Chapter 1, "Datatypes for C"](#):

- [oracheck](#) on page 1-3
- [oraerr](#) on page 1-3
- [oraprop\\_id](#) on page 1-3
- [oramemctx](#) on page 1-3
- [oraprop](#) on page 1-4
- [oraprop\\_t](#) on page 1-4
- [oraprop\\_v](#) on page 1-4
- [orastream](#) on page 1-4
- [orastreamhdl](#) on page 1-4

## New Features for Oracle Database 11g Release 1 (11.1)

The following features are new to the Oracle Database 11g Release 1:

### DOM Stream Access to XML Nodes and Attributes

Information about this feature is in the chapter [Chapter 3, "Package DOM APIs for C"](#). It includes support for the following functions:

- [XmlDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream\(\)](#) on page 3-68
- [XmlDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream\(\)](#) on page 3-68
- [XmlDomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream\(\)](#) on page 3-69

- [XmlDomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream\(\)](#) on page 3-69
- [XmlDomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream\(\)](#) on page 3-78
- [XmlDomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream\(\)](#) on page 3-78
- [XmlDomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream\(\)](#) on page 3-79
- [XmlDomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream\(\)](#) on page 3-79

### **Node Management**

The following functions update the name of the specified node.

- [XmlDomRenameNode\(\)](#) on page 3-74
- [XmlDomRenameNodeNS\(\)](#) on page 3-74

### **XML Diff Support**

Information about this feature is in the new [Chapter 12, "Package XmlDiff APIs for C"](#). It includes support for the following functions:

- [XmlDiff\(\)](#) on page 12-2
- [XmlHash\(\)](#) on page 12-3
- [XmlPatch\(\)](#) on page 12-4

### **Event-based XML Pull Parsing and Scalable and High Performance XML Validation**

Information about this feature is in the new [Chapter 4, "Package Event APIs for C"](#).

---

## Datatypes for C

This package defines macros which declare functions (or function pointers) for XML callbacks. Callbacks are used for error-message handling, memory allocation and freeing, and stream operations.

This chapter contains this section:

- [C Datatypes](#)

**See Also:**

- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

## C Datatypes

[Table 1–1](#) lists all C datatypes and their descriptions.

**Table 1–1 Summary of C Datatypes**

Datatype	Purpose
<a href="#">oracheck</a> on page 1-3	Checkword for validating data structures.
<a href="#">oraerr</a> on page 1-3	Error code: 0 is success, non-0 is failure.
<a href="#">oraprop_id</a> on page 1-3	The id of property; if $\geq 0$ it is valid, if $< 0$ , it is invalid.
<a href="#">oramemctx</a> on page 1-3	Opaque memory context.
<a href="#">oraprop</a> on page 1-4	Property name.
<a href="#">oraprop_t</a> on page 1-4	Property value type.
<a href="#">oraprop_v</a> on page 1-4	Value: union of storage for all data types.
<a href="#">orastream</a> on page 1-4	Opaque stream object.
<a href="#">orastreamhdl</a> on page 1-4	Storage for file handles.
<a href="#">xmlcmphow</a> on page 1-5	Constant used for DOM Range comparisons.
<a href="#">xmlctx</a> on page 1-5	Context shared for all documents in an XML session.
<a href="#">xmldfsrct</a> on page 1-5	Specifies input types for <code>XmlDiff</code> operations
<a href="#">xmller</a> on page 1-6	Numeric error code returned by many functions.
<a href="#">xmlevctx</a> on page 1-6	XML Event context.
<a href="#">xmlhash</a> on page 1-7	The hash value of an XML tree or sub-tree; also known as a digest.
<a href="#">xmlistream</a> on page 1-7	Generic user-defined input stream.
<a href="#">xmliter</a> on page 1-8	Control structure for DOM2 <code>NodeIterator</code> and <code>TreeWalker</code> .
<a href="#">xmlnodetype</a> on page 1-8	The numeric type code of a node.
<a href="#">xmlostream</a> on page 1-9	Generic user-defined output stream.
<a href="#">xmlpoint</a> on page 1-9	XPointer point location.
<a href="#">xmlrange</a> on page 1-9	Controls structure for DOM2 Range.
<a href="#">xmlsoapbind</a> on page 1-10	Binding for SOAP connections.
<a href="#">xmlsoapcon</a> on page 1-10	SOAP connection object.
<a href="#">xmlsoapctx</a> on page 1-10	Context for SOAP operations.
<a href="#">xmlsoaprole</a> on page 1-10	Role for a SOAP node.
<a href="#">xmlshowbits</a> on page 1-10	Bit flags used to select which node types to show.
<a href="#">xmlurlacc</a> on page 1-11	This is an enumeration of the known access methods for retrieving data from a URL.
<a href="#">xmlurlhdl</a> on page 1-11	This union contains the handle(s) needed to access URL data, be it a stream or <code>stdio</code> pointer, file descriptor(s), and so on.
<a href="#">xmlurlpart</a> on page 1-11	This structure contains the sub-parts of a URL.
<a href="#">xmlxptrloc</a> on page 1-12	XPointer location datatype.
<a href="#">xmlxptrlocset</a> on page 1-12	XPointer location set datatype.

**Table 1-1 (Cont.) Summary of C Datatypes**

Datatype	Purpose
<a href="#">xmlslobjtype</a> on page 1-12	Type of XSLT object that may be returned.
<a href="#">xmlslomethod</a> on page 1-12	Type of output produced by the XSLT processor.
<a href="#">xmlxvm</a> on page 1-13	An object of type <code>xmlxvm</code> is used for XML document transformation.
<a href="#">xmlxvmcomp</a> on page 1-13	An object of type <code>xmlxvmcomp</code> is used for compiling XSL stylesheets.
<a href="#">xmlxvmflags</a> on page 1-13	Control flags for the XSLT compiler.
<a href="#">xmlxvmbjtype</a> on page 1-13	Type of XSLTVM object.
<a href="#">xpctx</a> on page 1-14	XPath top-level context.
<a href="#">xpexpr</a> on page 1-14	XPath expression.
<a href="#">xobj</a> on page 1-14	XPath object.
<a href="#">xsdctx</a> on page 1-14	XMLSchema validator context.
<a href="#">xslctx</a> on page 1-14	XSL top-level context.
<a href="#">xvmbj</a> on page 1-14	XSLVM processor run-time object; contents are private and must not be accessed by users.

## oracheck

Checkword for validating data structures.

### Definition

```
typedef ub4 oracheck;
```

## oraerr

Error code: 0 is success, non-0 is failure.

### Definition

```
typedef ub4 oraerr;
```

## oraprop\_id

The id of property; if  $\geq 0$  it is valid, if  $< 0$ , it is invalid.

### Definition

```
typedef sb2 oraprop_id;
```

## oramemctx

Opaque memory context.

**Definition**

```
typedef struct oramemctx oramemctx;
```

**oraprop**

Property name.

**Definition**

```
typedef struct oraprop {
    oratext    *name_oraprop;
    oraprop_id  id_oraprop;
    oraprop_t   type_oraprop;
    oraprop_v   value_oraprop;
} oraprop;
```

**oraprop\_t**

Property value type.

**Definition**

```
typedef enum {
    ORAPROP_TYPE_BOOLEAN,
    ORAPROP_TYPE_SIGNED,
    ORAPROP_TYPE_UNSIGNED,
    ORAPROP_TYPE_POINTER
} oraprop_t;
```

**oraprop\_v**

Value: union of storage for all data types.

**Definition**

```
typedef union oraprop_v {
    boolean b_oraprop_v;
    sb4     s_oraprop_v;
    ub4     u_oraprop_v;
    void    *p_oraprop_v;
} oraprop_v;
```

**orastream**

Opaque stream object.

**Definition**

```
typedef struct orastream orastream;
```

**orastreamhdl**

Storage for file handles.

**Definition**

```
typedef union orastreamhdl {
```

---

```

void *ptr_orastreamhdl; /* generic pointer stream/file/etc */
struct {
    sb4 fd_orastreamhdl; /* file descriptor(s) [FTP needs all 3!] */
    sb4 fd2_orastreamhdl;
    sb4 fd3_orastreamhdl;
} fds_lpihdl;
} orastreamhdl;

```

## **xmlcmphow**

Constant used for DOM Range comparisons.

### **Definition**

```

typedef enum {
    XMLDOM_START_TO_START ,
    XMLDOM_START_TO_END   ,
    XMLDOM_END_TO_END     ,
    XMLDOM_END_TO_START
} xmlcmphow;

```

## **xmlctx**

Context shared for all documents in an XML session. Contains encoding information, low-level memory allocation function pointers, error message language or encoding and optional handler function, and so on. Required to load (parse) documents and create DOM, generate SAX, and so on.

### **Definition**

```

struct xmlctx;
typedef struct xmlctx xmlctx;

```

## **xmldfotype**

Operation type, represents one or more operations. Used for passing the diff to a custom Operation Buildder (OB) in [XmlDiff\(\)](#) on page 12-2.

### **Definition**

```

typedef enum {
    XMLDF_OP_NONE, /* Should not be set to non-zero for XMLDF_NUM_OP macro below */
    XMLDF_OP_UPDATE,
    XMLDF_OP_RENAME,
    XMLDF_OP_DELETE,
    XMLDF_OP_INSERT_BEFORE,
    XMLDF_OP_APPEND
} xmldfotype;

```

## **xmldfsrct**

Specifies input types for [XmlDiff](#) operations.

### **Definition**

```

typedef enum {
    XMLDF_SRCT_NONE , /* default is DOM */
    XMLDF_SRCT_DOM , /* DOM: doc node must be specified */
    XMLDF_SRCT_FILE, /* file name must be specified */
    XMLDF_SRCT_URL , /* URL in compiler encoding */
}

```

```

XMLDF_SRCT_BUFFER,    /* buffer: buffer pointer and length must be specified */
XMLDF_SRCT_FILEP,    /* FILE */
XMLDF_SRCT_OSTREAM,  /* orastream: stream pointer must be specified */
XMLDF_SRCT_DOMNODE   /* DOM node, used with XmlHash() */
} xmldfsrct;

```

**xmterr**

Numeric error code returned by many functions. A zero value indicates success; a nonzero value indicates error.

**Definition**

```

typedef enum {
    XMLERR_OK          , /* success return */
    XMLERR_NULL_PTR    , /* NULL pointer */
    XMLERR_NO_MEMORY   , /* out of memory */
    XMLERR_HASH_DUP    , /* duplicate entry in hash table */
    XMLERR_INTERNAL    , /* internal error */
    XMLERR_BUFFER_OVERFLOW, /* name/quoted string too long */
    XMLERR_BAD_CHILD   , /* invalid child for parent */
    XMLERR_EOI          , /* unexpected EndOfInformation */
    XMLERR_BAD_MEMCB   , /* invalid memory callbacks */
    XMLERR_UNICODE_ALIGN, /* Unicode data misalignment */
    XMLERR_NODE_TYPE   , /* wrong node type */
    XMLERR_UNCLEAN     , /* context is not clean */
    XMLERR_NESTED_STRINGS, /* internal: nested open str */
    XMLERR_PROP_NOT_FOUND, /* property not found */
    XMLERR_SAVE_OVERFLOW, /* save output overflowed */
    XMLERR_NOT_IMP     , /* feature not implemented */
    XMLERR_NLS_MISMATCH, /* specify lxglo/lxd or neither */
    XMLERR_NLS_INIT     , /* error at NLS initialization */
    XMLERR_LEH_INIT     , /* error at LEH initialization */
    XMLERR_LML_INIT     , /* error at LML initialization */
    XMLERR_LPU_INIT     , /* error at LPU initialization */
} xmterr;

```

**xmlevctx**

XML Event context.

**Definition**

```

typedef struct {
    void *ctx_xmlevctx;      /* implementation specific context */
    xmlevdisp disp_xmlevctx; /* dispatch table */
    ub4 checkword_xmlevctx; /* checkword for integrity check */
    ub4 flags_xmlevctx;     /* mode; default: expand_entity */
    struct xmlevctx;        /* input xmlevctx; chains the XML Event context */
} xmlevctx;

```

**xmlevtype**

The event type for parser pull events.

**Definition**

```

typedef enum xmlevtype {
    XML_EVENT_FATAL_ERROR, /* Fatal Error */
    XML_EVENT_BEFORE_START, /* Before Start Document */
}

```

```

XML_EVENT_START_DOCUMENT,           /* Indicates Start Document */
XML_EVENT_START_DTD,              /* Start DTD */
XML_EVENT_END_DTD,                /* End DTD */
XML_EVENT_NOTATION_DECLARATION,   /* Notation Decl */
XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION,         /* PE Decl */
XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION,         /* US Decl */
XML_EVENT_ELEMENT_DECLARATION,    /* Element Decl */
XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION,    /* Attribute Decl */
XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT,          /* Start Element */
XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT,            /* End Element */
XML_EVENT_CHARACTERS,             /* Characters (text) */
XML_EVENT_CHARACTERS_CONT,        /* Characters Continued */
XML_EVENT_PI,                     /* Processing Instruction */
XML_EVENT_PI_CONT,                /* Processing Instruction Continued */
XML_EVENT_COMMENT,                /* Comment */
XML_EVENT_COMMENT_CONT,           /* Comment Continued */
XML_EVENT_SPACE,                  /* White Space */
XML_EVENT_SPACE_CONT,              /* White Space Continued */
XML_EVENT_ENTITY_REFERENCE,       /* Entity Reference */
XML_EVENT_CDATA,                  /* CDATA */
XML_EVENT_CDATA_CONT,              /* CDATA continued */
XML_EVENT_START_ENTITY,            /* Start Entity */
XML_EVENT_END_ENTITY,              /* End Entity */
XML_EVENT_END_DOCUMENT,            /* End Document */
XML_EVENT_ERROR,                  /* Error */
}xmlevtype;

```

## **xmlhasht**

The hash value of an XML tree or sub-tree; also known as a digest.

If the hash values for two XML trees are equal, the trees are considered equal, to a very high probability; uses the MD5 algorithm.

### **Definition**

```

struct xmlhasht {
    ub4 l_xmlhasht;    /* lenght of digest in bytes */
    ub1 d_xmlhasht[XMLDF_DIGEST_MAX]; /* the digest */
};
typedef struct xmlhasht xmlhasht;

```

## **xmlistream**

Generic user-defined input stream. The three function pointers are required (but may be stubs). The context pointer is entirely user-defined; point it to whatever state information is required to manage the stream; it will be passed as first argument to the user functions.

### **Definition**

```

typedef struct xmlistream {
    XML_STREAM_OPEN_F(
        (*open_xmlistream),
        xctx,
        sctx,
        path,
        parts,
        length);
    XML_STREAM_READ_F(

```

---

```

        (*read_xmlistream),
        xctx,
        sctx,
        path,
        dest,
        size,
        nraw, eoi);
XML_STREAM_CLOSE_F(
        (*close_xmlistream),
        xctx,
        sctx);
void *ctx_xmlistream;                                /* user's stream context */
} xmlistream;

```

## xmliter

Control structure for DOM 2 NodeIterator and TreeWalker.

### Definition

```

struct xmliter {
    xmlnode *root_xmliter;    /* root node of the iteration space */
    xmlnode *cur_xmliter;     /* current position iterator ref node */
    ub4      show_xmliter;    /* node filter mask */
    void    *filt_xmliter;    /* node filter function */
    boolean attach_xmliter;  /* is iterator valid? */
    boolean expan_xmliter;   /* are external entities expanded? */
    boolean before_xmliter;  /* iter position before ref node? */
};

typedef struct xmliter xmliter;
typedef struct xmliter xmlwalk;

```

## xmlnodetype

The numeric type code of a node. 0 means invalid, 1-13 are the standard numberings from DOM 1.0, and higher numbers are for internal use only.

### Definition

```

typedef enum {
    XMLDOM_NONE      , /* bogus node */
    XMLDOM_ELEM       , /* element */
    XMLDOM_ATTR      , /* attribute */
    XMLDOM_TEXT      , /* char data not escaped by CDATA */
    XMLDOM_CDATA     , /* char data escaped by CDATA */
    XMLDOM_ENTREF   , /* entity reference */
    XMLDOM_ENTITY    , /* entity */
    XMLDOM_PI        , /* <?processing instructions?> */
    XMLDOM_COMMENT   , /* <!-- Comments --> */
    XMLDOM_DOC       , /* Document */
    XMLDOM_DTD       , /* DTD */
    XMLDOM_FRAG      , /* Document fragment */
    XMLDOM_NOTATION , /* notation */

    /* Oracle extensions from here on */
    XMLDOM_ELEMDECL , /* DTD element declaration */
    XMLDOM_ATTRDECL , /* DTD attribute declaration */

    /* Content Particles (nodes in element's Content Model) */
}

```

---

```

XMLDOM_CPELEM , /* element */
XMLDOM_CPCHOICE , /* choice (a|b) */
XMLDOM_CPSEQ , /* sequence (a,b) */
XMLDOM_CPPCDATA , /* #PCDATA */
XMLDOM_CPSTAR , /* '*' (zero or more) */
XMLDOM_CPLUS , /* '+' (one or more) */
XMLDOM_CPOPT , /* '?' (optional) */
XMLDOM_CPEND /* end marker */
} xmlnodetype;

```

## **xmlostream**

Generic user-defined output stream. The three function pointers are required (but may be stubs). The context pointer is entirely user-defined; point it to whatever state information is required to manage the stream; it will be passed as first argument to the user functions.

### **Definition**

```

typedef struct xmlofstream {
    XML_STREAM_OPEN_F(
        (*open_xmlofstream),
        xctx,
        sctx,
        path,
        parts,
        length);
    XML_STREAM_WRITE_F(
        (*write_xmlofstream),
        xctx,
        sctx,
        path,
        src,
        size);
    XML_STREAM_CLOSE_F(
        (*close_xmlofstream),
        xctx,
        sctx);
    void *ctx_xmlofstream; /* user's stream context */
} xmlofstream;

```

## **xmlpoint**

XPointer point location.

### **Definition**

```
typedef struct xmlpoint xmlpoint;
```

## **xmlrange**

Control structure for DOM 2 Range.

### **Definition**

```

typedef struct xmlrange {
    xmlnode *startnode_xmlrange; /* start point container */
    ub4      startofst_xmlrange; /* start point index */
    xmlnode *endnode_xmlrange;   /* end point container */
}

```

```
ub4      endofst_xmlrange;    /* end point index */
xmlnode *doc_xmlrange;        /* document node */
xmlnode *root_xmlrange;       /* root node of the range */
boolean collapsed_xmlrange;   /* is range collapsed? */
boolean detached_xmlrange;    /* range invalid, invalidated? */
} xmlrange;
```

## xmlsoapbind

Binding for SOAP connections. SOAP does not dictate the binding (transport) used for conveying messages; however the HTTP protocol is well-defined and currently the only choice.

### Definition

```
typedef enum xmlsoapbind {
    XMLSOAP_BIND_NONE , /* none */
    XMLSOAP_BIND_HTTP   /* HTTP */ } xmlsoapbind;
```

## xmlsoapcon

SOAP connection object. Each distinct connection requires an instance of this type, which contains binding and endpoint information.

### Definition

```
typedef struct xmlsoapcon xmlsoapcon;
```

## xmlsoapctx

Context for SOAP operations. Only a single context is needed and it can be shared by several SOAP messages.

### Definition

```
typedef struct xmlsoapctx xmlsoapctx;
```

## xmlsoaprole

Role for a SOAP node.

### Definition

```
typedef enum xmlsoaprole {
    XMLSOAP_ROLE_UNSET,    /* not specified */
    XMLSOAP_ROLE_NONE,     /* "none" */
    XMLSOAP_ROLE_NEXT,     /* "next" */
    XMLSOAP_ROLE_ULT,      /* "ultimateReceiver" */
    XMLSOAP_ROLE_OTHER     /* other - user defined */
} xmlsoaprole;
```

## xmlshowbits

Bit flags used to select which nodes types to show.

**Definition**

```

typedef ub4 xmlshowbits;
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_ALL      ~ (ub4) 0
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(ntype) ((ub4)1 << (ntype))
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_ELEM      XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_ELEM)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_ATTR      XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_ATTR)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_TEXT      XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_TEXT)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_CDATA     XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_CDATA)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_ENTREF    XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_ENTREF)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_ENTITY    XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_ENTITY)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_PI        XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_PI)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_COMMENT   XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_COMMENT)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_DOC       XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_DOC)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_DTD       XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_DTD)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_FRAG      XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_FRAG)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_NOTATION  XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_NOTATION)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_DOC_TYPE  XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_DOC_TYPE)

```

**xmlurlacc**

This is an enumeration of the known access methods for retrieving data from a URL. Open/read/close functions may be plugged in to override the default behavior.

**Definition**

```

typedef enum {
    XML_ACCESS_NONE      , /* not specified */
    XML_ACCESS_UNKNOWN   , /* specified but unknown */
    XML_ACCESS_FILE      , /* filesystem access */
    XML_ACCESS_HTTP      , /* HTTP */
    XML_ACCESS_FTP       , /* FTP */
    XML_ACCESS_GOPHER   , /* Gopher */
    XML_ACCESS_ORADB    , /* Oracle DB */
    XML_ACCESS_STREAM   /* user-defined stream */
} xmlurlacc;

```

**xmlurlhdl**

This union contains the handle(s) needed to access URL data, be it a stream or stdio pointer, file descriptor(s), and so on.

**Definition**

```

typedef union xmlurlhdl {
    void *ptr_xmlurlhdl; /* generic stream/file/... handle */
    struct {
        sb4 fd1_xmlurlhdl; /* file descriptor(s) [FTP needs all 3!] */
        sb4 fd2_xmlurlhdl;
        sb4 fd3_xmlurlhdl;
    } fds_lpihdl;
} xmlurlhdl;

```

**xmlurlpart**

This structure contains the sub-parts of a URL. The original URL is parsed and the pieces copies (NULL-terminated) to a working buffer, then this structure is filled in to point to the parts. Given URL

`http://user:pwd@baz.com:8080/pub/baz.html;quux=1?huh#fraggy`, the example component part from this URL will be shown.

**Definition**

```
typedef struct xmlurlpart {
    xmlurlacc access_xmlurlpart; /* access method code, XMLACCESS_HTTP */
    oratext *accbuf_xmlurlpart; /* access method name: "http" */
    oratext *host_xmlurlpart; /* hostname: "baz.com" */
    oratext *dir_xmlurlpart; /* directory: "pub" */
    oratext *file_xmlurlpart; /* filename: "baz.html" */
    oratext *uid_xmlurlpart; /* userid/username: "user" */
    oratext *passwd_xmlurlpart; /* password: "pwd" */
    oratext *port_xmlurlpart; /* port (as string): "8080" */
    oratext *frag_xmlurlpart; /* fragment: "fraggy" */
    oratext *query_xmlurlpart; /* query: "huh" */
    oratext *param_xmlurlpart; /* parameter: "quux=1" */
    ub2     portnum_xmlurlpart; /* port (as number): 8080 */
    ub1     abs_xmlurlpart; /* absolute path? TRUE */
} xmlurlpart;
```

**xmlxptrloc**

XPointer location data type.

**Definition**

```
typedef struct xmlxptrloc xmlxptrloc;
```

**xmlxptrlocset**

XPointer location set data type.

**Definition**

```
typedef struct xmlxptrlocset xmlxptrlocset;
```

**xmlxslobjtype**

Type of XSLT object that may be returned.

**Definition**

```
typedef enum xmlxslobjtype {
    XMLXSL_TYPE_UNKNOWN , /* Not a defined type */
    XMLXSL_TYPE_NDSET   , /* Node-set */
    XMLXSL_TYPE_BOOL    , /* Boolean value */
    XMLXSL_TYPE_NUM     , /* Numeric value (double) */
    XMLXSL_TYPE_STR     , /* String */
    XMLXSL_TYPE_FRAG    /* Document Fragment */
} xmlxslobjtype;
```

**xmlxslmethod**

Type of output to be produced by the XSLT processor.

**Definition**

```
typedef enum xmlxslmethod {
    XMLXSL_OUTPUT_UNKNOWN , /* Not defined */
    XMLXSL_OUTPUT_XML     , /* Produce a Document Fragment */
}
```

---

```

XMLXSL_OUTPUT_STREAM , /* Stream out formatted result */
XMLXSL_OUTPUT_HTML      /* Stream out HTML formatted result */
} xmlxslomethod;

```

## **xmlxvm**

An object of type `xmlxvm` is used for XML documents transformation. The contents of `xmlxvm` are private and must not be accessed by users.

### **Definition**

```

struct xmlxvm;
typedef struct xmlxvm xmlxvm;

```

## **xmlxvmcomp**

An object of type `xmlxvmcomp` is used for compiling XSL stylesheets. The contents of `xmlxvmcomp` are private and must not be accessed by users.

### **Definition**

```

struct xmlxvmcomp;
typedef struct xmlxvmcomp xmlxvmcomp;

```

## **xmlxvmflags**

Control flags for the XSLT compiler.

- `XMLXVM_DEBUG` forces compiler to insert debug information into the bytecode.
- `XMLXVM_STRIPSPACE` forces the same behavior as `xsl:strip-space elements="*"`

### **Definition**

```

typedef ub4 xmlxvmflag;
#define XMLXVM_NOFLAG
#define XMLXVM_DEBUG      /* insert debug info into bytecode */
#define XMLXVM_STRIPSPACE /* same as xsl:strip-space elements="* " */

```

## **xmlxvmojtype**

Type of XSLTVM object.

### **Definition**

```

typedef enum xmlxvmojtype {
    XMLXVM_TYPE_UNKNOWN ,
    XMLXVM_TYPE_NDSET   ,
    XMLXVM_TYPE_BOOL    ,
    XMLXVM_TYPE_NUM     ,
    XMLXVM_TYPE_STR     ,
    XMLXVM_TYPE_FRAG
} xmlxvmojtype;

```

**xpctx**

XPath top-level context.

**Definition**

```
struct xpctx;
typedef struct xpctx xpctx;
```

**xpexpr**

XPath expression.

**Definition**

```
struct xpexpr;
typedef struct xpexpr xpexpr;
```

**xpobj**

Xpath object.

**Definition**

```
struct xpobj;
typedef struct xpobj xpobj;
```

**xsdctx**

XML Schema validator context, created by `XmlSchemaCreate` and passed to most Schema functions.

**Definition**

```
# define XSDCTX_DEFINED
struct xsdctx; typedef struct xsdctx xsdctx;
```

**xslctx**

XSL top-level context.

**Definition**

```
struct xslctx;
typedef struct xslctx xslctx;
```

**xvmobj**

XSLVM processor run-time object; content is private and must not be accessed by users.

**Definition**

```
struct xvmobj;
typedef struct xvmobj xvmobj;
```

# 2

---

## Package Callback APIs for C

This package defines macros which declare functions (or function pointers) for XML callbacks. Callbacks are used for error-message handling, memory allocation and freeing, and stream operations.

This chapter contains the following section:

- [Callback Methods](#)

**See Also:**

- [\*Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide\*](#)
- [\*Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide\*](#)

## Callback Methods

[Table 2–1](#) summarizes the methods available through the Callback interface.

**Table 2–1 Summary of Callback Methods**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XML_ACCESS_CLOSE_F()</a> on page 2-2	User-defined access method close callback.
<a href="#">XML_ACCESS_OPEN_F()</a> on page 2-2	User-defined access method open callback.
<a href="#">XML_ACCESS_READ_F()</a> on page 2-3	User-defined access method read callback.
<a href="#">XML_ALLOC_F()</a> on page 2-3	Low-level memory allocation.
<a href="#">XML_ERRMSG_F()</a> on page 2-4	Handles error message.
<a href="#">XML_FREE_F()</a> on page 2-4	Low-level memory freeing.
<a href="#">XML_STREAM_CLOSE_F()</a> on page 2-5	User-defined stream close callback.
<a href="#">XML_STREAM_OPEN_F()</a> on page 2-5	User-defined stream open callback.
<a href="#">XML_STREAM_READ_F()</a> on page 2-6	User-defined stream read callback.
<a href="#">XML_STREAM_WRITE_F()</a> on page 2-6	User-defined stream write callback.

### XML\_ACCESS\_CLOSE\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the close function callback used to access a URL.

#### Syntax

```
#define XML_ACCESS_CLOSE_F(func, ctx, uh)
xmlerr func(
    void *ctx,
    xmlurhdl *uh);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user-defined context
uh	IN	URL handle(s)

#### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

**See Also:** [XML\\_ACCESS\\_OPEN\\_F\(\)](#), [XML\\_ACCESS\\_READ\\_F\(\)](#)

### XML\_ACCESS\_OPEN\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the open function callback used to access a URL.

#### Syntax

```
#define XML_ACCESS_OPEN_F(func, ctx, uri, parts, length, uh)
xmlerr func(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *uri,
```

---

```
xmlurlpart *parts,
ubig_ora *length,
xmlurlhdl *uh);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user-defined context
uri	IN	URI to be opened
parts	IN	URI broken into components
length	OUT	total length of input data if known, 0 otherwise
uh	IN	URL handle(s)

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

**See Also:** [XML\\_ACCESS\\_CLOSE\\_F\(\)](#), [XML\\_ACCESS\\_READ\\_F\(\)](#)

**XML\_ACCESS\_READ\_F()**

This macro defines a prototype for the read function callback used to access a URL.

**Syntax**

```
#define XML_ACCESS_READ_F(func, ctx, uh, data, nraw, eoi)
xmlerr func(
    void *ctx,
    xmlurlhdl *uh,
    oratext **data,
    ubig_ora *nraw,
    ub1 *eoi);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user-defined context
uh	IN	URL handle(s)
data	IN/OUT	recipient data buffer; reset to start of data
nraw	OUT	number of real data bytes read
eoi	OUT	signal to end of information; last chunk

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

**See Also:** [XML\\_ACCESS\\_OPEN\\_F\(\)](#), [XML\\_ACCESS\\_CLOSE\\_F\(\)](#)

**XML\_ALLOC\_F()**

This macro defines a prototype for the low-level memory `alloc` function provided by the user. If no allocator is provided, `malloc` is used. Memory should not be zeroed by this function. Matches [XML\\_FREE\\_F\(\)](#).

### Syntax

```
#define XML_ALLOC_F(func, mctx, size)
void *func(
    void *mctx,
    size_t size);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
mctx	IN	low-level memory context
size	IN	number of bytes to allocated

### Returns

(void \*) allocated memory

**See Also:** [XML\\_FREE\\_F\(\)](#)

## XML\_ERRMSG\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the error message handling function. If no error message callback is provided at XML initialization time, errors will be printed to stderr. If a handler is provided, it will be invoked instead of printing to stderr.

### Syntax

```
#define XML_ERRMSG_F(func, ectx, msg, err)
void func(
    void *ectx,
    oratext *msg,
    xmlerr err);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ectx	IN	error message context
msg	IN	text of error message
err	IN	numeric error code

**See Also:** [XmlCreate\(\)](#) in Chapter 11, "Package XML APIs for C"

## XML\_FREE\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the low-level memory free function provided by the user. If no allocator is provided, free() is used. Matches [XML\\_ALLOC\\_F\(\)](#).

### Syntax

```
#define XML_FREE_F(func, mctx, ptr)
void func(
    void *mctx,
    void *ptr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
mctx	IN	low-level memory context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ptr	IN	memory to be freed

## XML\_STREAM\_CLOSE\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the close function callback, called to close an open source and free its resources.

### Syntax

```
#define XML_STREAM_CLOSE_F(func, xctx, sctx)
void func(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    void *sctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
sctx	IN	user-defined stream context

**See Also:** [XML\\_STREAM\\_OPEN\\_F\(\)](#), [XML\\_STREAM\\_READ\\_F\(\)](#), [XML\\_STREAM\\_WRITE\\_F\(\)](#)

## XML\_STREAM\_OPEN\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the open function callback, which is called once to open the input source. This function should return XMLERR\_OK on success.

### Syntax

```
#define XML_STREAM_OPEN_F(func, xctx, sctx, path, parts, length)
xmlerr func(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    void *sctx,
    oratext *path,
    void *parts,
    ubig_ora *length);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
sctx	IN	user-defined stream context
path	IN	full path of the URI to be opened
parts	IN	URI broken down into components (opaque pointer)
length	(OUT)	total length of input data if known, 0 if not known

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

**See Also:** [XML\\_STREAM\\_CLOSE\\_F\(\)](#), [XML\\_STREAM\\_READ\\_F\(\)](#), [XML\\_STREAM\\_WRITE\\_F\(\)](#)

## XML\_STREAM\_READ\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the read function callback, called to read data from an open source into a buffer, returning the number of bytes read (< 0 on error). The `eoi` flag determines if this is the final block of data.

On EOI, the close function will be called automatically.

### Syntax

```
#define XML_STREAM_READ_F(func, xctx, sctx, path, dest, size, nraw, eoi)
xmlerr func(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    void *sctx,
    oratext *path,
    oratext *dest,
    size_t size,
    sbig_ora *nraw,
    boolean *eoi);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>sctx</code>	IN	user-defined stream context
<code>path</code>	IN	full URI of the open source (for error messages)
<code>dest</code>	(OUT)	destination buffer to read data into
<code>size</code>	IN	size of destination buffer
<code>nraw</code>	(OUT)	number of bytes read
<code>eoi</code>	(OUT)	signal to end of information; last chunk

### Returns

(`xmlerr`) numeric error code, 0 on success

**See Also:** [XML\\_STREAM\\_OPEN\\_F\(\)](#),  
[XML\\_STREAM\\_CLOSE\\_F\(\)](#), [XML\\_STREAM\\_WRITE\\_F\(\)](#)

## XML\_STREAM\_WRITE\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the write function callback, called to write data to a user-defined stream.

### Syntax

```
#define XML_STREAM_WRITE_F(func, xctx, sctx, path, src, size)
xmlerr func(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    void *sctx,
    oratext *path,
    oratext *src,
    size_t size);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
sctx	IN	user-defined stream context
path	IN	full URI of the open source (for error messages)
src	IN	source buffer to read data from
size	IN	size of source in bytes

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

**See Also:** [XML\\_STREAM\\_OPEN\\_F\(\)](#),  
[XML\\_STREAM\\_CLOSE\\_F\(\)](#), [XML\\_STREAM\\_READ\\_F\(\)](#)



# 3

---

## Package DOM APIs for C

This implementation follows REC-DOM-Level-1-19981001. Because the DOM standard is object-oriented, some changes were made for C language adaptation.

- Reused function names have to be expanded; `getValue` in the `Attr` interface has the unique name `Xm1DomGetAttrValue` that matches the pattern established by DOM 2's `getNodeValue`.
- Functions were added to extend the DOM beyond the standard; one example is `Xm1DomNumChildNodes`, which returns the number of children of a node.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Attr Interface](#)
- [CharacterData Interface](#)
- [Document Interface](#)
- [DocumentType Interface](#)
- [Element Interface](#)
- [Entity Interface](#)
- [NamedNodeMap Interface](#)
- [Node Interface](#)
- [NodeList Interface](#)
- [Notation Interface](#)
- [ProcessingInstruction Interface](#)
- [Text Interface](#)

**See Also:**

- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

## Attr Interface

Table 3–1 summarizes the methods available through the Attr interface.

**Table 3–1 Summary of Attr Methods; DOM Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrLocal()</a> on page 3-2	Returns an attribute's namespace local name as NULL-terminated string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen()</a> on page 3-3	Returns an attribute's namespace local name as length-encoded string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrName()</a> on page 3-3	Return attribute's name as NULL-terminated string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrNameLen()</a> on page 3-4	Return attribute's name as length-encoded string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrPrefix()</a> on page 3-5	Returns an attribute's namespace prefix.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrSpecified()</a> on page 3-5	Return flag that indicates whether an attribute was explicitly created.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrURI()</a> on page 3-6	Returns an attribute's namespace URI as NULL-terminated string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrURILen()</a> on page 3-6	Returns an attribute's namespace URI as length-encoded string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrValue()</a> on page 3-7	Return attribute's value as NULL-terminated string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrValueLen()</a> on page 3-7	Return attribute's value as length-encoded string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrValueStream()</a> on page 3-8	Get attribute value stream-style,i.e.chunked.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetOwnerElem()</a> on page 3-9	Return an attribute's "owning" element.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetAttrValue()</a> on page 3-9	Set an attribute's value.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetAttrValueStream()</a> on page 3-9	Sets an attribute value stream style (chunked).

### **XmIDomGetAttrLocal()**

Returns an attribute's namespace local name (in the data encoding). If the attribute's name is not fully qualified (has no prefix), then the local name is the same as the name.

A length-encoded version is available as `XmIDomGetAttrURILen` which returns the local name as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use XMLType backing store.

#### **Syntax**

```
oratext* XmIDomGetAttrLocal(
    xmlextx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) attribute's local name [data encoding]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrName\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetAttrURI\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrPrefix\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen()**

Returns an attribute's namespace local name (in the data encoding). If the attribute's name is not fully qualified (has no prefix), then the local name is the same as the name.

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmlDomGetAttrLocal` which returns the local name as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be `XMLType`, then the attribute's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based `GetXXX` functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

If both the input buffer is non-NUL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than `buflen`, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and `len` will return the actual length.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node
buf	IN	input buffer; optional
buflen	IN	input buffer length; optional
len	OUT	length of local name, in characters

**Returns**

(oratext \*) Attr's local name [data encoding]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetAttrLocal\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrName\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetAttrURI\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrPrefix\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrName()**

Returns the fully-qualified name of an attribute (in the data encoding) as a NULL-terminated string, for example `bar\0` or `foo:bar\0`.

A length-encoded version is available as `XmlDomGetAttrNameLen` which returns the attribute name as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use XMLType backing store.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrName(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node

### Returns

(oratext \*) name of attribute [data encoding]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetAttrNameLen\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrURI\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetAttrPrefix\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrLocal\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetAttrNameLen()

Returns the fully-qualified name of an attribute (in the data encoding) as a length-encoded string, for example ("bar", 3) or ("foo:bar", 7).

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmlDomGetAttrName` which returns the attribute name as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be XMLType, then the attribute's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based `GetXXX()` functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

If both the input buffer is non-NUL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than `buflen`, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and `len` will return the actual length.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrNameLen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node
buf	IN	input buffer; optional
buflen	IN	input buffer length; optional
len	OUT	length of local name, in characters

**Returns**

(oratext \*) name of attribute [data encoding]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetAttrName\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrURI\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetAttrPrefix\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrLocal\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrPrefix()**

Returns an attribute's namespace prefix (in the data encoding). If the attribute's name is not fully qualified (has no prefix), NULL is returned.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrPrefix(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) attribute's namespace prefix [data encoding] or NULL

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetAttrName\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrURI\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetAttrLocal\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrSpecified()**

Return the 'specified' flag for an attribute. If the attribute was explicitly given a value in the original document, this is TRUE; otherwise, it is FALSE. If the node is not an attribute, returns FALSE. If the user sets an attribute's value through DOM, its specified flag will be TRUE. To return an attribute to its default value (if it has one), the attribute should be deleted; it will then be re-created automatically with the default value (and specified will be FALSE).

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlDomGetAttrSpecified(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node

**Returns**

(boolean) attribute's "specified" flag

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetAttrURI()

Returns an attribute's namespace URI (in the data encoding). If the attribute's name is not qualified (does not contain a namespace prefix), it will have the default namespace in effect when the node was created (which may be NULL).

A length-encoded version is available as `XmlDomGetAttrURILen` which returns the URI as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use XMLType backing store.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrURI(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node

### Returns

(oratext \*) attribute's namespace URI [data encoding] or NULL

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetAttrURILen\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrPrefix\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrLocal\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetAttrURILen()

Returns an attribute's namespace URI (in the data encoding) as length-encoded string. If the attribute's name is not qualified (does not contain a namespace prefix), it will have the default namespace in effect when the node was created (which may be NULL).

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmlDomGetAttrURI` which returns the URI as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be XMLType, then the attribute's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based Get functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

If both the input buffer is non-NUL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than buflen, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and len will return the actual length.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrURILen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node
buf	IN	input buffer; optional
buflen	IN	input buffer length; optional
len	OUT	length of URI, in characters

**Returns**

(oratext \*) attribute's namespace URI [data encoding] or NULL

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetAttrURI\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrPrefix\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrLocal\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrValue()**

Returns the "value" (character data) of an attribute (in the data encoding) as NULL-terminated string. Character and general entities will have been replaced.

A length-encoded version is available as XmlDomGetAttrValueLen which returns the attribute value as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use XMLType backing store.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrValue(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) attribute's value

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetAttrValueLen\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrValueLen()**

Returns the "value" (character data) of an attribute (in the data encoding) as length-encoded string. Character and general entities will have been replaced.

A NULL-terminated version is available as XmlDomGetAttrValue which returns the attribute value as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be XMLType, then the attribute's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based GetXXX() functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

If both the input buffer is non-NULL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than buflen, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and len will return the actual length.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrValueLen(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node
buf	IN	input buffer; optional
buflen	IN	input buffer length; optional
len	OUT	length of attribute's value, in characters

### Returns

(oratext \*) attribute's value

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetAttrValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetAttrValueStream()

Returns the large "value" (associated character data) for an attribute and sends it in pieces to the user's output stream. For very large values, it is not always possible to store them [efficiently] as a single contiguous chunk. This function is used to access chunked data of that type.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomGetAttrValueStream(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *attr,
    xmlostream *ostream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node
ostream	IN	output stream object

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

## XmldomGetOwnerElem()

Returns the Element node associated with an attribute. Each attr either belongs to an element (one and only one), or is detached and not yet part of the DOM tree. In the former case, the element node is returned; if the attr is unassigned, NULL is returned.

### Syntax

```
xmlelemnode* XmldomGetOwnerElem(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node

### Returns

(xmlelemnode \*) attribute's element node [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmldomGetOwnerDocument\(\)](#)

## XmldomSetAttrValue()

Sets the given attribute's value to data. If the node is not an attribute, does nothing. Note that the new value must be in the data encoding! It is not verified, converted, or checked. The attribute's specified flag will be TRUE after setting a new value.

### Syntax

```
void XmldomSetAttrValue(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr,
    oratext *value);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node
value	IN	new value of attribute; data encoding

**See Also:** [XmldomGetAttrValue\(\)](#)

## XmldomSetAttrValueStream()

Sets the large "value" (associated character data) for an attribute piecemeal from an input stream. For very large values, it is not always possible to store them efficiently as a single contiguous chunk. This function is used to access chunked data of that type.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmldomSetAttrValueStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
```

```
xmlnode *attr,  
xmistream *istream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node
isream	IN	input stream

### Returns

(`xmlerr`) numeric error code, 0 on success

## CharacterData Interface

[Table 3–2](#) summarizes the methods available through the CharacterData interface.

**Table 3–2 Summary of CharacterData Method; DOM Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomAppendData()</a> on page 3-11	Append data to end of node's current data.
<a href="#">XmlDomDeleteData()</a> on page 3-12	Remove part of node's data.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetCharData()</a> on page 3-12	Return data for node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetCharDataLength()</a> on page 3-13	Return length of data for node.
<a href="#">XmlDomInsertData()</a> on page 3-13	Insert string into node's current data.
<a href="#">XmlDomReplaceData()</a> on page 3-14	Replace part of node's data.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetCharData()</a> on page 3-14	Set data for node.
<a href="#">XmlDomSubstringData()</a> on page 3-15	Return substring of node's data.

### XmlDomAppendData()

Append a string to the end of a CharacterData node's data. If the node is not Text, Comment or CDATA, or if the string to append is NULL, does nothing. The appended data should be in the data encoding. It will not be verified, converted, or checked.

The new node data will be allocated and managed by DOM, but if the previous node value was allocated and manager by the user, they are responsible for freeing it, which is why it is returned.

#### Syntax

```
void XmlDomAppendData(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *data,
    oratext **old);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	CharacterData node
data	IN	data to append; data encoding
old	OUT	previous data for node; data encoding

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#), [XmlDomInsertData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomDeleteData\(\)](#), [XmlDomReplaceData\(\)](#), [XmlDomSplitText\(\)](#)

## XmlDomDeleteData()

Remove a range of characters from a CharacterData node's data. If the node is not text, comment or CDATA, or if the offset is outside of the original data, does nothing. The offset is zero-based, so offset zero refers to the start of the data. Both offset and count are in characters, not bytes. If the sum of offset and count exceeds the data length then all characters from offset to the end of the data are deleted.

The new node data will be allocated and managed by DOM, but if the previous node value was allocated and managed by the user, they are responsible for freeing it, which is why it is returned.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomDeleteData(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    ub4 offset,
    ub4 count,
    oratext **old);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	CharacterData node
offset	IN	character offset where to start removing
count	IN	number of characters to delete
old	OUT	previous data for node; data encoding

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#), [XmlDomAppendData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomInsertData\(\)](#), [XmlDomReplaceData\(\)](#), [XmlDomSplitText\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetCharData()

Returns the data for a CharacterData node (type text, comment or CDATA) in the data encoding. For other node types, or if there is no data, returns NULL.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetCharData(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	CharacterData node; Text, Comment or CDATA

### Returns

(oratext \*) character data of node [data encoding]

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetCharData\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateText\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomCreateComment\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateCDATA\(\)](#)

## XmldomGetCharDataLength()

Returns the length of the data for a CharacterData node, type Text, Comment or CDATA) in characters, not bytes. For other node types, returns 0.

### Syntax

```
ub4 XmldomGetCharDataLength(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *cdata);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	CharacterData node; Text, Comment or CDATA

### Returns

(ub4) length in characters, not bytes, of node's data

**See Also:** [XmldomGetCharData\(\)](#)

## XmldomInsertData()

Insert a string into a CharacterData node's data at the specified position. If the node is not Text, Comment or CDATA, or if the data to be inserted is NULL, or the offset is outside the original data, does nothing. The inserted data must be in the data encoding. It will not be verified, converted, or checked. The offset is specified as characters, not bytes. The offset is zero-based, so inserting at offset zero prepends the data.

The new node data will be allocated and managed by DOM, but if the previous node value was allocated and managed by the user, they are responsible for freeing it (which is why it's returned).

### Syntax

```
void XmldomInsertData(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    ub4 offset,
    oratext *arg,
    oratext **old);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	CharacterData node; Text, Comment, or CDATA
offset	IN	character offset where to start inserting
arg	IN	data to insert
old	OUT	previous data for node; data encoding

**See Also:** [XmldomGetCharData\(\)](#), [XmldomAppendData\(\)](#),  
[XmldomDeleteData\(\)](#), [XmldomReplaceData\(\)](#), [XmldomSplitText\(\)](#)

## XmIDomReplaceData()

Replaces a range of characters in a `CharacterData` node's data with a new string. If the node is not text, comment or CDATA, or if the offset is outside of the original data, or if the replacement string is NULL, does nothing. If the count is zero, acts just as `XmlDomInsertData`. The offset is zero-based, so offset zero refers to the start of the data. The replacement data must be in the data encoding. It will not be verified, converted, or checked. The offset and count are both in characters, not bytes. If the sum of offset and count exceeds length, then all characters to the end of the data are replaced.

The new node data will be allocated and managed by DOM, but if the previous node value was allocated and managed by the user, they are responsible for freeing it, which is why it is returned.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomReplaceData(
    xmldctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    ub4 offset,
    ub4 count,
    oratext *arg,
    oratext **old);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	CharacterData node; Text, Comment, or CDATA
offset	IN	character offset where to start replacing
count	IN	number of characters to replace
arg	IN	replacement substring; data encoding
old	OUT	previous data for node; data encoding

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#), [XmlDomAppendData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomInsertData\(\)](#), [XmlDomDeleteData\(\)](#), [XmlDomSplitText\(\)](#)

## XmIDomSetCharData()

Sets data for a `CharacterData` node (type text, comment or CDATA), replacing the old data. For other node types, does nothing. The new data is not verified, converted, or checked; it should be in the data encoding.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomSetCharData(
    xmldctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *data);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
node	IN	CharacterData node; Text, Comment, or CDATA
data	IN	new data for node

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#)

## XmlDomSubstringData()

Returns a range of character data from a CharacterData node, type Text, Comment or CDATA. For other node types, or if count is zero, returns NULL. Since the data is in the data encoding, offset and count are in characters, not bytes. The beginning of the string is offset 0. If the sum of offset and count exceeds the length, then all characters to the end of the data are returned.

The substring is permanently allocated in the node's document's memory pool. To free the substring, use [XmlDomFreeString\(\)](#).

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomSubstringData(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    ub4 offset,
    ub4 count);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	CharacterData node; Text, Comment, or CDATA
offset	IN	character offset where to start extraction of substring
count	IN	number of characters to extract

### Returns

(oratext \*) specified substring.

**See Also:** [XmlDomAppendData\(\)](#), [XmlDomInsertData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomDeleteData\(\)](#), [XmlDomReplaceData\(\)](#), [XmlDomSplitText\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomFreeString\(\)](#)

## Document Interface

Table 3–3 summarizes the methods available through the Document interface.

**Table 3–3 Summary of Document Methods; DOM Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateAttr()</a> on page 3-17	Create attribute node.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateAttrNS()</a> on page 3-17	Create attribute node with namespace information.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateCDATA()</a> on page 3-18	Create CDATA node.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateComment()</a> on page 3-19	Create comment node.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateElem()</a> on page 3-19	Create an element node.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateElemNS()</a> on page 3-20	Create an element node with namespace information.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateEntityRef()</a> on page 3-21	Create entity reference node.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateFragment()</a> on page 3-21	Create a document fragment.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreatePI()</a> on page 3-22	Create PI node.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateText()</a> on page 3-22	Create text node.
<a href="#">XmlDomFreeString()</a> on page 3-23	Frees a string allocate by <code>XmlDomSubstringData</code> , and others.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetBaseURI()</a> on page 3-23	Returns the base URI for a document.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDTD()</a> on page 3-24	Get DTD for document.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDecl()</a> on page 3-24	Returns a document's <code>XMLDecl</code> information.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDocElem()</a> on page 3-25	Get top-level element for document.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDocElemByID()</a> on page 3-25	Get document element given ID.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag()</a> on page 3-26	Obtain document elements.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS()</a> on page 3-27	Obtain document elements (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomGetLastError()</a> on page 3-27	Return last error code for document.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetSchema()</a> on page 3-28	Returns URI of schema associated with document.
<a href="#">XmlDomImportNode()</a> on page 3-28	Import a node from another DOM.
<a href="#">XmlDomIsSchemaBased()</a> on page 3-29	Indicate whether a schema is associated with a document.
<a href="#">XmlDomSaveString()</a> on page 3-29	Saves a string permanently in a document's memory pool.
<a href="#">XmlDomSaveString2()</a> on page 3-30	Saves a Unicode string permanently in a document's memory pool.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetDTD()</a> on page 3-31	Sets DTD for document.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetDocOrder()</a> on page 3-31	Set document order for all nodes.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetLastError()</a> on page 3-32	Sets last error code for document.

**Table 3–3 (Cont.) Summary of Document Methods; DOM Package**


---

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomSync()</a> on page 3-32	Synchronizes the persistent version of a document with its DOM.

---

## XmlDomCreateAttr()

Creates an attribute node with the given name and value (in the data encoding). Note this function differs from the DOM specification, which does not allow the initial value of the attribute to be set (see [XmlDomSetAttrValue](#)). The name is required, but the value may be NULL; neither is verified, converted, or checked.

This is the non-namespace aware function (see [XmlDomCreateAttrNS](#)): the new attribute will have NULL namespace URI and prefix, and its local name will be the same as its name, even if the name specified is a qualified name.

If given an initial value, the attribute's specified flag will be TRUE.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with [XmlDomAppendChild](#), and so on.

See [XmlDomSetAttr](#) which creates and adds an attribute in a single operation.

The name and value are not copied, their pointers are just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

### Syntax

```
xmlattrnode* XmlDomCreateAttr(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *doc,
    oratext *name,
    oratext *value);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
name	IN	new node's name; data encoding; user control
value	IN	new node's value; data encoding; user control

---

### Returns

(xmlattrnode \*) new Attr node.

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateAttrNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

## XmlDomCreateAttrNS()

Creates an attribute node with the given namespace URI and qualified name; this is the namespace-aware version of [XmlDomCreateAttr](#). Note this function differs from the DOM specification, which does not allow the initial value of the attribute to be set (see [XmlDomSetAttrValue](#)). The name is required, but the value may be NULL; neither is verified, converted, or checked.

If given an initial value, the attribute's specified flag will be TRUE.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild`, and so on. See `XmlDomSetAttr` which creates and adds an attribute in a single operation.

The URI, qualified name and value are not copied, their pointers are just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

### Syntax

```
xmlattrnode* XmlDomCreateAttrNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *qname,
    oratext *value);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
uri	IN	node's namespace URI; data encoding; user control
qname	IN	node's qualified name; data encoding; user control
value	IN	new node's value; data encoding; user control

### Returns

(`xmlattrnode *`) new Attr node.

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateAttr\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomSetAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

## XmlDomCreateCDATA()

Creates a CDATASection node with the given initial data (which should be in the data encoding). A CDATASection is considered verbatim and is never parsed; it will not be joined with adjacent Text nodes by the normalize operation. The initial data may be NULL; if provided, it is not verified, converted, or checked. The name of a CDATA node is always "#cdata-section".

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild` and so on.

The CDATA is not copied, its pointer is just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

### Syntax

```
xmlcdatanode* XmlDomCreateCDATA(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *data);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
doc	IN	XML document node
data	IN	new node's CDATA; data encoding; user control

**Returns**

(xmlcdatanode \*) new CDATA node.

**See Also:** [XmlDomCreateText\(\)](#), [XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

**XmlDomCreateComment()**

Creates a Comment node with the given initial data (which must be in the data encoding). The data may be NULL; if provided, it is not verified, converted, or checked. The name of a Comment node is always "#comment".

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild` and so on.

The comment data is not copied, its pointer is just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

**Syntax**

```
xmlcommentnode* XmlDomCreateComment(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *data);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
data	IN	new node's comment; data encoding; user control

**Returns**

(xmlcommentnode \*) new Comment node.

**See Also:** [XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

**XmlDomCreateElem()**

Creates an element node with the given tag name (which should be in the data encoding). Note that the tag name of an element is case sensitive. This is the non-namespace aware function: the new node will have NULL namespace URI and prefix, and its local name will be the same as its tag name, even if the tag name specified is a qualified name.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild` and so on.

The tagname is not copied, its pointer is just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

## Syntax

```
xmlelemnode* XmlDomCreateElem(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *tagname);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
tagname	IN	new node's name; data encoding; user control

## Returns

(xmlelemnode \*) new Element node.

**See Also:** [XmlDomCreateElemNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

## XmlDomCreateElemNS()

Creates an element with the given namespace URI and qualified name. Note that element names are case sensitive, and the qualified name is required though the URI may be NULL. The qualified name will be split into prefix and local parts, retrievable with `XmlDomGetNodePrefix`, `XmlDomGetNodeLocal`, and so on; the tagName will be the full qualified name.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild` and so on.

The URI and qualified name are not copied, their pointers are just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

## Syntax

```
xmlelemnode* XmlDomCreateElemNS (
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *qname);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
uri	IN	new node's namespace URI; data encoding, user control
qname	IN	new node's qualified name; data encoding; user control

## Returns

(xmlelemnode \*) new Element node.

**See Also:** [XmlDomCreateElem\(\)](#), [XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

## XmldomCreateEntityRef()

Creates an EntityReference node; the name (which should be in the data encoding) is the name of the entity to be referenced. The named entity does not have to exist. The name is not verified, converted, or checked.

EntityReference nodes are never generated by the parser; instead, entity references are expanded as encountered. On output, an entity reference node will turn into a "&name;" style reference.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with XmldomAppendChild, and so on.

The entity reference name is not copied, its pointer is just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

### Syntax

```
xmlentrefnode* XmldomCreateEntityRef(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
name	IN	name of referenced entity; data encoding; user control

### Returns

(xmlentrefnode \*) new EntityReference node.

## XmldomCreateFragment()

Creates an empty DocumentFragment node. A document fragment is treated specially when it is inserted into a DOM tree: the children of the fragment are inserted in order instead of the fragment node itself. After insertion, the fragment node will still exist, but have no children. See XmldomInsertBefore, XmldomReplaceChild, XmldomAppendChild, and so on. The name of a fragment node is always "#document-fragment".

### Syntax

```
xmlfragnode* XmldomCreateFragment(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

### Returns

(xmlfragnode \*) new empty DocumentFragment node

**See Also:** [XmlDomInsertBefore\(\)](#), [XmlDomReplaceChild\(\)](#), [XmlDomAppendChild\(\)](#)

## XmlDomCreatePI()

Creates a ProcessingInstruction node with the given target and data (which should be in the data encoding). The data may be NULL initially, and may be changed later (with `XmlDomSetPIData`), but the target is required and cannot be changed. Note the target and data are not verified, converted, or checked. The name of a PI node is the same as the target.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild` and so on.

The PI's target and data are not copied, their pointers are just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

### Syntax

```
xmlpinode* XmlDomCreatePI (
    xmlctx *xctx
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *target,
    oratext *data);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
target	IN	new node's target; data encoding; user control
data	IN	new node's data; data encoding; user control

### Returns

(`xmlpinode *`) new PI node.

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetPITarget\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetPIData\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetPIData\(\)](#), [XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

## XmlDomCreateText()

Creates a Text node with the given initial data (which must be non-NULL and in the data encoding). The data may be NULL; if provided, it is not verified, converted, checked, or parsed (entities will not be expanded). The name of a fragment node is always "#text". New data for a Text node can be set; see the `CharacterData` interface for editing methods.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild` and so on.

The text data is not copied, its pointer is just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

### Syntax

```
xmltextnode* XmlDomCreateText (
```

---

```
xmlctx *xctx,
xmldocnode *doc,
oratext *data);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
data	IN	new node's text; data encoding; user control

### Returns

(xmltextnode \*) new Text node.

**See Also:** [XmlDomCreateCDATA\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetNodeValue\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetnodeValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetCharData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetCharDataLength\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomSubstringData\(\)](#), [XmlDomAppendData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomInsertData\(\)](#), [XmlDomDeleteData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomReplaceData\(\)](#), [XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

## XmlDomFreeString()

Frees the string allocated by `XmlDomSubstringData` or similar functions. Note that strings explicitly saved with `XmlDomSaveString` are not freeable individually.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomFreeString(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *str);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	document where the string belongs
str	IN	string to free

**See Also:** [XmlDomSaveString\(\)](#), [XmlDomSaveString2\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetBaseURI()

Returns the base URI for a document. Usually only documents that were loaded from a URI will automatically have a base URI; documents loaded from other sources (`stdin`, `buffer`, and so on) will not naturally have a base URI, but a base URI may have been set for them using `XmlDomSetBaseURI`, for the purposes of resolving relative URIs in inclusion.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlDomGetBaseURI(
    xmlctx *xctx,
```

```
xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) document's base URI [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmIDomSetBaseURI\(\)](#)

**XmIDomGetDTD()**

Returns the DTD node associated with current document; if there is no DTD, returns NULL. The DTD cannot be edited, but its children may be retrieved with XmIDomGetChildNodes as for other node types.

**Syntax**

```
xmldtdnode* XmIDomGetDTD(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

**Returns**

(xmldtdnode \*) DTD node for document [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmIDomSetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlCreateDTD\(\)](#) and [XmlCreate\(\)](#) in Chapter 11, "Package XML APIs for C", [XmIDomGetDTDName\(\)](#), [XmIDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#), and [XmIDomGetDTDNotations\(\)](#)

**XmIDomGetDecl()**

Returns the information from a document's XMLDecl. If there is no XMLDecl, returns XMLERR\_NO\_DECL. Returned are the XML version# ("1.0" or "2.0"), the specified encoding, and the standalone value. If encoding is not specified, NULL will be set. The standalone flag is three-state: < 0 if standalone was not specified, 0 if it was specified and FALSE, > 0 if it was specified and TRUE.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmIDomGetDecl(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext **ver,
    oratext **enc,
    sb4 *std);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
ver	OUT	XML version
enc	OUT	encoding specification
std	OUT	standalone specification

**Returns**

(xmlerr) XML error code, perhaps version/encoding/standalone set

**XmldomGetDocElem()**

Returns the root element (node) of the DOM tree, or NULL if there is none. Each document has only one uppermost Element node, called the root element. It is created after a document is parsed successfully, or manually by `XmldomCreateElem` then `XmldomAppendChild`, and so on.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode* XmldomGetDocElem(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) root element [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmldomCreateElem\(\)](#)**XmldomGetDocElemByID()**

Returns the element node which has the given ID. If no such ID is defined, returns NULL. Note that attributes named "ID" are not automatically of type ID; ID attributes (which can have any name) must be declared as type ID in the DTD.

The given ID should be in the data encoding or it might not match.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode* XmldomGetDocElemByID(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *id);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
doc	IN	XML document node
id	IN	element's unique ID; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) matching element.

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag()**

Returns a list of all elements in the document tree rooted at the root node with a given tag name, in document order (the order in which they would be encountered in a preorder traversal of the tree). If root is NULL, the entire document is searched.

The special name "\*" matches all tag names; a NULL name matches nothing. Note that tag names are case sensitive, and should be in the data encoding or a mismatch might occur.

This function is not namespace aware; the full tag names are compared. If two qualified names with two different prefixes both of which map to the same URI are compared, the comparison will fail. See [XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS](#) for the namespace-aware version.

The list should be freed with [XmlDomFreeNodeList](#) when it is no longer needed.

The list is not live, it is a snapshot. That is, if a new node which matched the tag name were added to the DOM after the list was returned, the list would not automatically be updated to include the node.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnodeList* XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
name	IN	tagname to match; data encoding; * for all

**Returns**

(xmlnodeList \*) new NodeList containing all matched Elements.

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetDocElemByID\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

## XmldomGetDocElemsByTagNS()

Returns a list of all elements (in the document tree rooted at the given node) with a given namespace URI and local name, in the order in which they would be encountered in a preorder traversal of the tree. If root is NULL, the entire document is searched.

The URI and local name should be in the data encoding. The special local name "\*" matches all local names; a NULL local name matches nothing. Namespace URIs must always match, however, no wildcard is allowed. Note that comparisons are case sensitive. See XmldomGetDocElemsByTag for the non-namespace aware version.

The list should be freed with XmldomFreeNodeList when it is no longer needed.

The list is not live, it is a snapshot. That is, if a new node which matched the tag name were added to the DOM after the list was returned, the list would not automatically be updated to include the node.

### Syntax

```
xmlnodeList* XmldomGetDocElemsByTagNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
uri	IN	namespace URI to match; data encoding; * matches all
local	IN	local name to match; data encoding; * matches all

### Returns

(xmlnodeList \*) new NodeList containing all matched Elements.

**See Also:** [XmldomGetDocElemByID\(\)](#),  
[XmldomGetDocElemsByTag\(\)](#), [XmldomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

## XmldomGetLastError()

Returns the error code of the last error which occurred in the given document.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmldomGetLastError(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 if no error

**XmlDomGetSchema()**

Returns URI of schema associated with document, if there is one, else returns NULL. The `XmlLoadDom` functions take a schema location hint (URI); the schema is used for efficient layout of XMLType data. If a schema was provided at load time, this function returns TRUE.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetSchema(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) Schema URI or NULL

**See Also:** [XmlDomIsSchemaBased\(\)](#), [XmlLoadDom\(\)](#) in Chapter 11, "Package XML APIs for C"

**XmlDomImportNode()**

Imports a node from one Document to another. The new node is an orphan and has no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlNodeAppendChild`, and so on. The original node is not modified in any way or removed from its document; instead, a new node is created with copies of all the original node's qualified name, prefix, namespace URI, and local name.

As with `XmlNodeCloneNode`, the deep controls whether the children of the node are recursively imported. If FALSE, only the node itself is imported, and it will have no children. If TRUE, all descendants of the node will be imported as well, and an entire new subtree created.

Document and DocumentType nodes cannot be imported. Imported attributes will have their specified flags set to TRUE. Elements will have only their specified attributes imported; non-specified (default) attributes are omitted. New default attributes (for the destination document) are then added.

**Syntax**

```
xmldnode* XmlDomImportNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    xmlctx *nctx,
    xmldnode *node,
    boolean deep);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
nctx	IN	XML context of imported node
node	IN	node to import
deep	IN	TRUE to import the subtree recursively

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) newly imported node (in this Document).

**See Also:** [XmlDomCloneNode\(\)](#)**XmlDomIsSchemaBased()**

Returns flag specifying whether there is a schema associated with this document. The `XmlLoadDom` functions take a schema location hint (URI); the schema is used for efficient layout of XMLType data. If a schema was provided at load time, this function returns TRUE.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlDomIsSchemaBased(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE if there is a schema associated with the document

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetSchema\(\)](#), [XmlLoadDom\(\)](#) in Chapter 11, "Package XML APIs for C"**XmlDomSaveString()**

Copies the given string into the document's memory pool, so that it persists for the life of the document. The individual string will not be freeable, and the storage will be returned only when the entire document is freed. Works on single-byte or multibyte encodings; for Unicode strings, use `XmlDomSaveString2`.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomSaveString(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *str);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
str	IN	string to save; data encoding; single- or multi-byte only

**Returns**

(oratext \*) saved copy of string

**See Also:** [XmlDomSaveString2\(\)](#), [XmlFreeDocument\(\)](#) in Chapter 11, "Package XML APIs for C"

**XmIDomSaveString2()**

Copies the given string into the document's memory pool, so that it persists for the life of the document. The individual string will not be freeable, and the storage will be returned only when the entire document is free. Works on Unicode strings only; for single-byte or multibyte strings, use [XmIDomSaveString](#).

**Syntax**

```
ub2* XmIDomSaveString2(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    ub2 *ustr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
ustr	IN	string to save; data encoding; Unicode only

**Returns**

(ub2 \*) saved copy of string

**See Also:** [XmIDomSaveString\(\)](#), [XmlFreeDocument\(\)](#) in Chapter 11, "Package XML APIs for C"

**XmIDomSetBaseURI()**

Only documents that were loaded from a URI will automatically have a base URI; documents loaded from other sources (stdin, buffer, and so on) will not naturally have a base URI, so this API is used to set a base URI, for the purposes of relative URI resolution in includes. The base URI should be in the data encoding, and a copy will be made.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmIDomSetBaseURI(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *uri);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
uri	IN	base URI to set; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlerr) XML error code

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetBaseURI\(\)](#)**XmlDomSetDTD()**

Sets the DTD for document. Note this call may only be used for a blank document, before any parsing has taken place. A single DTD can be set for multiple documents, so when a document with a set DTD is freed, the set DTD is not also freed.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomSetDTD(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    xmldtdnode *dtdnode);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
dtdnode	IN	DocumentType node to set

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDName\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDNotations\(\)](#)**XmlDomSetDocOrder()**

Sets the document order for each node in the current document. Must be called once on the final document before XSLT processing can occur. Note this is called automatically by the XSLT processor, so ordinarily the user need not make this call.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlDomSetDocOrder(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    ub4 start_id);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
doc	IN	XML document node
start_id	IN	string ID number

**Returns**

(ub4) highest ordinal assigned

**XmlDomSetLastError()**

Sets the Last Error code for the given document. If doc is NULL, sets the error code for the XML context.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomSetLastError(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    xmlerr errcode);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
errcode	IN	error code to set, 0 to clear error

**Returns**

(xmlerr) original error code

**XmlDomSync()**

Causes a modified DOM to be written back out to its original source, synchronizing the persistent store and in-memory versions.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomSync(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

## DocumentType Interface

Table 3–4 summarizes the methods available through the DocumentType interface.

**Table 3–4 Summary of DocumentType Methods; DOM Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDTDEntities()</a> on page 3-33	Get entities of DTD.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset()</a> on page 3-33	Get DTD's internal subset.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDTDName()</a> on page 3-34	Get name of DTD.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetTDNotations()</a> on page 3-34	Get notations of DTD.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDTDPubID()</a> on page 3-35	Get DTD's public ID.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDTDSysID()</a> on page 3-35	Get DTD's system ID.

### XmlDomGetDTDEntities()

Returns a named node map of general entities defined by the DTD. If the node is not a DTD, or has no general entities, returns NULL.

#### Syntax

```
xmlnamedmap* XmlDomGetDTDEntities(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldtdnode *dtd);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
dtd	IN	DTD node

#### Returns

(xmlnamedmap \*) named node map containing entities declared in DTD

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDName\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetTDNotations\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDSysID\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset\(\)](#)

### XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset()

Returns the content model for an element. If there is no DTD, returns NULL.

#### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldtdnode *dtd,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
dtd	IN	DTD node
name	IN	name of Element; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) content model subtree

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDName\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDNotations\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDPubID\(\)](#)

**XmIDomGetDTDName()**

Returns a DTD's name (specified immediately after the DOCTYPE keyword), or NULL if the node is not type DTD.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmIDomGetDTDName(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldtnode *dtd);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
dtd	IN	DTD node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) name of DTD

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDNotations\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDSysID\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset\(\)](#)

**XmIDomGetDTDNotations()**

Returns named node map of notations declared by the DTD. If the node is not a DTD or has no Notations, returns NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnamedmap* XmIDomGetDTDNotations(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldtnode *dtd);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
dtd	IN	DTD node

**Returns**

(xmlnamedmap \*) named node map containing notations declared in DTD

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDName\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDSysID\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetDTDPubID()**

Returns a DTD's public identifier.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetDTDPubID(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldtdnode *dtd);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
dtd	IN	DTD node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) DTD's public identifier [data encoding]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDName\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDSysID\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetDTDSysID()**

Returns a DTD's system identifier.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetDTDSysID(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldtdnode *dtd);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
dtd	IN	DTD node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) DTD's system identifier [data encoding]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDName\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDPubID\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset\(\)](#)

## Element Interface

[Table 3–5](#) summarizes the methods available through the Element Interface.

**Table 3–5 Summary of Element Methods; DOM Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttr()</a> on page 3-36	Return attribute's value given its name.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrNS()</a> on page 3-37	Return attribute's value given its URI and local name.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrNode()</a> on page 3-37	Get attribute by name.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrNodeNS()</a> on page 3-38	Get attribute by name (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomGetChildrenByTag()</a> on page 3-38	Get children of element with given tag name (non-namespace aware).
<a href="#">XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS()</a> on page 3-39	Get children of element with tag name (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag()</a> on page 3-26	Obtain doc elements.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS()</a> on page 3-27	Obtain doc elements (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomGetTag()</a> on page 3-41	Return an element node's tag name.
<a href="#">XmlDomHasAttr()</a> on page 3-41	Does named attribute exist?
<a href="#">XmlDomHasAttrNS()</a> on page 3-41	Does named attribute exist (namespace aware version)?
<a href="#">XmlDomRemoveAttr()</a> on page 3-42	Remove attribute with specified name.
<a href="#">XmlDomRemoveAttrNS()</a> on page 3-42	Remove attribute with specified URI and local name.
<a href="#">XmlDomRemoveAttrNode()</a> on page 3-43	Remove attribute node.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetAttr()</a> on page 3-43	Set new attribute for element.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetAttrNS()</a> on page 3-44	Set new attribute for element (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomSetAttrNode()</a> on page 3-44	Set attribute node.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS()</a> on page 3-45	Set attribute node (namespace aware version).

### **XmlDomGetAttr()**

Returns the value of an element's attribute (specified by name). Note that an attribute may have the empty string as its value, but cannot be NULL. If the element does not have an attribute with the given name, NULL is returned.

#### **Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttr(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
name	IN	attribute's name

**Returns**

(oratext \*) named attribute's value [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetAttrNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrs\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetAttrNode\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrNS()**

Returns the value of an element's attribute (specified by URI and local name). Note that an attribute may have the empty string as its value, but cannot be NULL. If the element does not have an attribute with the given name, NULL is returned.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
uri	IN	attribute's namespace URI; data encoding
local	IN	attribute's local name; data encoding

**Returns**

(oratext \*) named attribute's value [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrs\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetAttrNode\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrNode()**

Returns an element's attribute specified by name. If the node is not an element or the named attribute does not exist, returns NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlattrnode* XmlDomGetAttrNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
name	IN	attribute's name; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlattrnode \*) attribute with the specified name [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetAttrNodeNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttr\(\)](#)**XmIDomGetAttrNodeNS()**

Returns an element's attribute specified by URI and localname. If the node is not an element or the named attribute does not exist, returns NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlattrnode* XmIDomGetAttrNodeNS(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
uri	IN	attribute's namespace URI; data encoding
local	IN	attribute's local name; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlattrnode \*) attribute node with the given URI/local name [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetAttrNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttr\(\)](#)**XmIDomGetChildrenByTag()**

Returns a list of children of an element with the given tag name, in the order in which they would be encountered in a preorder traversal of the tree. The tag name should be in the data encoding. The special name "\*" matches all tag names; a NULL name matches nothing. Note that tag names are case sensitive. This function is not namespace aware; the full tag names are compared. If two prefixes which map to the same URI are compared, the comparison will fail. See [XmIDomGetChildrenByTagNS](#) for the namespace-aware version. The returned list can be freed with [XmIDomFreeNodeList](#).

**Syntax**

```
xmlnodelist* XmIDomGetChildrenByTag(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
```

---

```
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
name	IN	tag name to match; data encoding; * for all

---

**Returns**

(xmlnode list \*) node list of matching children

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS()**

Returns a list of children of an element with the given URI and local name, in the order in which they would be encountered in a preorder traversal of the tree. The URI and local name should be in the data encoding. The special name "\*" matches all URIs or tag names; a NULL name matches nothing. Note that names are case sensitive. See [XmlDomGetChildrenByTag](#) for the non-namespace version. The returned list can be freed with [XmlDomFreeNodeList](#).

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode list * XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
uri	IN	namespace URI to match; data encoding; * matches all
local	IN	local name to match; data encoding; * matches all

---

**Returns**

(xmlnode list \*) node list of matching children

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetChildrenByTag\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetElemsByTag()**

Returns a list of all elements (in the document tree rooted at the root node) with a given tag name, in the order in which they would be encountered in a preorder traversal of the tree. If root is NULL, the entire document is searched. The tag name should be in the data encoding. The special name "\*" matches all tag names; a NULL name matches nothing. Note that tag names are case sensitive. This function is not namespace aware; the full tag names are compared. If two prefixes which map to the same URI are compared, the comparison will fail. See [XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS](#) for

the namespace-aware version. The returned list can be freed with `XmlDomFreeNodeList`.

### Syntax

```
xmlnodeList* XmlDomGetElemsByTag (
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
name	IN	tag name to match; data encoding; * for all

### Returns

(`xmlnodeList *`) node list of matching elements

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS()

Returns a list of all elements (in the document tree rooted at the root node) with a given URI and localname, in the order in which they would be encountered in a preorder traversal of the tree. If root is NULL, the entire document is searched. The tag name should be in the data encoding. The special name "\*" matches all tag names; a NULL name matches nothing. Note that tag names are case sensitive. This function is not namespace aware; the full tag names are compared. If two prefixes which map to the same URI are compared, the comparison will fail. The returned list can be freed with `XmlDomFreeNodeList`.

### Syntax

```
xmlnodeList* XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS (
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
uri	IN	namespace URI to match; data encoding; * for all
local	IN	local name to match; data encoding; * for all

### Returns

(`xmlnodeList *`) node list of matching elements

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

## XmldomGetTag()

Returns the `tagName` of a node, which is the same as its name. DOM 1.0 states "...even though there is a generic `nodeName` attribute on the `Node` interface, there is still a `tagName` attribute on the `Element` interface; these two attributes must contain the same value, but the Working Group considers it worthwhile to support both, given the different constituencies the DOM API must satisfy."

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmldomGetTag(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	Element node

### Returns

(`oratext *`) element's name [data encoding]

**See Also:** [XmldomGetnodeName\(\)](#)

## XmldomHasAttr()

Determines if an element has an attribute with the given name. Returns TRUE if so, FALSE if not.

### Syntax

```
boolean XmldomHasAttr(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	Element node
name	IN	attribute's name; data encoding

### Returns

(`boolean`) TRUE if element has attribute with given name

**See Also:** [XmldomHasAttrNS\(\)](#)

## XmldomHasAttrNS()

Determines if an element has an attribute with the given URI and localname. Returns TRUE if so, FALSE if not.

## Syntax

```
boolean XmlDomHasAttrNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	Element node
uri	IN	attribute's namespace URI; data encoding
local	IN	attribute's local name; data encoding

## Returns

(boolean) TRUE if element has attribute with given URI/localname

**See Also:** [XmlDomHasAttr\(\)](#)

## XmlDomRemoveAttr()

Removes an attribute (specified by name). If the removed attribute has a default value it is immediately re-created with that default. Note that the attribute is removed from the element's list of attributes, but the attribute node itself is not destroyed.

## Syntax

```
void XmlDomRemoveAttr(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
name	IN	attribute's name; data encoding

**See Also:** [XmlDomRemoveAttrNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomRemoveAttrNode\(\)](#)

## XmlDomRemoveAttrNS()

Removes an attribute (specified by URI and local name). If the removed attribute has a default value it is immediately re-created with that default. Note that the attribute is removed from the element's list of attributes, but the attribute node itself is not destroyed.

## Syntax

```
void XmlDomRemoveAttrNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
```

---

```
oratext *uri,
oratext *local);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
uri	IN	attribute's namespace URI
local	IN	attribute's local name

---

**See Also:** [XmlDomRemoveAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomRemoveAttrNode\(\)](#)

## XmlDomRemoveAttrNode()

Removes an attribute from an element. If the attribute has a default value, it is immediately re-created with that value (Specified set to FALSE). Returns the removed attribute on success, else NULL.

### Syntax

```
xmlattrnode* XmlDomRemoveAttrNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    xmlattrnode *oldAttr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
oldAttr	IN	attribute node to remove

---

### Returns

(xmlattrnode \*) replaced attribute node [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomRemoveAttr\(\)](#)

## XmlDomSetAttr()

Creates a new attribute for an element with the given name and value (which should be in the data encoding). If the named attribute already exists, its value is simply replaced. The name and value are not verified, converted, or checked. The value is not parsed, so entity references will not be expanded. The attribute's specified flag will be set.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomSetAttr(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *name,
    oratext *value);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
name	IN	attribute's name; data encoding
value	IN	attribute's value; data encoding

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetAttrNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateAttr\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomSetValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomRemoveAttr\(\)](#)

## XmlDomSetAttrNS()

Creates a new attribute for an element with the given URI, localname and value (which should be in the data encoding). If the named attribute already exists, its value is simply replaced. The name and value are not verified, converted, or checked.

The value is not parsed, so entity references will not be expanded.

The attribute's specified flag will be set.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomSetAttrNS(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *qname,
    oratext *value);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
uri	IN	attribute's namespace URI; data encoding
qname	IN	attribute's qualified name; data encoding
value	IN	attribute's value; data encoding

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateAttr\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomSetValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomRemoveAttr\(\)](#)

## XmlDomSetAttrNode()

Adds a new attribute to an element. If an attribute with the given name already exists, it is replaced and the old attribute returned through `oldNode`. If the attribute is new, it is added to the element's list and `oldNode` set to NULL.

### Syntax

```
xmlattrnode* XmlDomSetAttrNode(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    xmlattrnode *newAttr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
newAttr	IN	attribute node to add

**Returns**

(xmlattrnode \*) replaced attribute node (or NULL)

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#)

**XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS()**

Adds a new attribute to an element. If an attribute with newNode's URI and localname already exists, it is replaced and the old attribute returned through oldNode. If the attribute is new, it is added to the element's list and oldNode set to NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlattrnode* XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    xmlattrnode *newAttr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
newAttr	IN	attribute node to add

**Returns**

(xmlattrnode \*) replaced attribute node [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetAttrNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#)

## Entity Interface

[Table 3–6](#) summarizes the methods available through the Entity interface.

**Table 3–6 Summary of Entity Methods; DOM Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetEntityNotation() on page 3-46</a>	Get entity's notation.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetEntityPubID() on page 3-46</a>	Get entity's public ID.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetEntitySysID() on page 3-47</a>	Get entity's system ID.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetEntityType() on page 3-47</a>	Get entity's type.

### **XmlDomGetEntityNotation()**

For unparsed entities, returns the name of its notation (in the data encoding). For parsed entities and other node types, returns NULL.

#### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetEntityNotation(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmlentnode *ent);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
ent	IN	entity node

#### Returns

(oratext \*) entity's notation [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetEntityPubID\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetEntitySysID\(\)](#)

### **XmlDomGetEntityPubID()**

Returns an entity's public identifier (in the data encoding). If the node is not an entity, or has no defined public ID, returns NULL.

#### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetEntityPubID(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmlentnode *ent);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
ent	IN	entity node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) entity's public identifier [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetEntitySysID\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetEntityNotation\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetEntitySysID()**

Returns an entity's system identifier (in the data encoding). If the node is not an entity, or has no defined system ID, returns NULL.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetEntitySysID(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlentnode *ent);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
ent	IN	entity node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) entity's system identifier [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetEntityPubID\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetEntityNotation\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetEntityType()**

Returns a boolean for an entity describing whether it is general (TRUE) or parameter (FALSE).

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlDomGetEntityType(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlentnode *ent);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
ent	IN	entity node

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE for general entity, FALSE for parameter entity

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetEntityPubID\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetEntitySysID\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetEntityNotation\(\)](#)

## NamedNodeMap Interface

[Table 3–7](#) summarizes the methods available through the NamedNodeMap interface.

**Table 3–7 Summary of NamedNodeMap Methods; DOM Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNamedItem()</a> on page 3-48	Return named node from list.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNamedItemNS()</a> on page 3-49	Return named node from list (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeMapItem()</a> on page 3-49	Return n <sup>th</sup> node in list.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeMapLength()</a> on page 3-50	Return length of named node map.
<a href="#">XmlDomRemoveNamedItem()</a> on page 3-50	Remove node from named node map.
<a href="#">XmlDomRemoveNamedItemNS()</a> on page 3-51	Remove node from named node map (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomSetNamedItem()</a> on page 3-51	Set node in named node list.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetNamedItemNS()</a> on page 3-52	Set node in named node list (namespace aware version).

### XmlDomGetNamedItem()

Retrieves an item from a NamedNodeMap, specified by name (which should be in the data encoding). This is a non-namespace-aware function; it just matches (case sensitively) on the whole qualified name. Note this function differs from the DOM spec in that the index of the matching item is also returned.

#### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetNamedItem(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmllnamedmap *map,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap
name	IN	name of the node to retrieve

#### Returns

(xmlnode \*) Node with the specified name [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetNamedItemNS\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodeMapItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#)

## XmldomGetNamedItemNS()

Retrieves an item from a NamedNodeMap, specified by URI and localname (which should be in the data encoding). Note this function differs from the DOM spec in that the index of the matching item is also returned.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmldomGetNamedItemNS (
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap
uri	IN	namespace URI of the node to retrieve; data encoding
local	IN	local name of the node to retrieve; data encoding

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) node with given local name and namespace URI [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmldomGetNamedItem\(\)](#),  
[XmldomGetNodeMapItem\(\)](#), [XmldomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#)

## XmldomGetNodeMapItem()

Retrieves an item from a NamedNodeMap, specified by name (which should be in the data encoding). This is a non-namespace-aware function; it just matches (case sensitively) on the whole qualified name. Note this function differs from the DOM specification in that the index of the matching item is also returned. Named "item" in W3C specification.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmldomGetNodeMapItem (
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap
index	IN	0-based index for the map

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) node at the nth position in the map (or NULL)

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetNamedItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetNamedItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomRemoveNamedItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetNodeMapLength()

Returns the number of nodes in a NamedNodeMap (the length). Note that nodes are referred to by index, and the range of valid indexes is 0 through length-1.

### Syntax

```
ub4 XmlDomGetNodeMapLength(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap

### Returns

(ub4) number of nodes in NamedNodeMap

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetNodeMapItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNamedItem\(\)](#)

## XmlDomRemoveNamedItem()

Removes a node from a NamedNodeMap, specified by name. This is a non-namespace-aware function; it just matches (case sensitively) on the whole qualified name. If the removed node is an attribute with default value (not specified), it is immediately replaced. The removed node is returned; if no removal took place, NULL is returned.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRemoveNamedItem(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap
name	IN	name of node to remove

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) node removed from this map

**See Also:** [XmlDomRemoveNamedItemNS\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNamedItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNamedItemNS\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomSetNamedItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetNamedItemNS\(\)](#)

## XmldomRemoveNamedItemNS()

Removes a node from a NamedNodeMap, specified by URI and localname. If the removed node is an attribute with default value (not specified), it is immediately replaced. The removed node is returned; if no removal took place, NULL is returned.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmldomRemoveNamedItemNS (
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap
uri	IN	namespace URI of the node to remove; data encoding
local	IN	local name of the node to remove; data encoding

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) node removed from this map

**See Also:** [XmldomRemoveNamedItem\(\)](#),  
[XmldomGetNamedItem\(\)](#), [XmldomGetNamedItemNS\(\)](#),  
[XmldomSetNamedItem\(\)](#), [XmldomSetNamedItemNS\(\)](#)

## XmldomSetNamedItem()

Adds a new node to a NamedNodeMap. If a node already exists with the given name, replaces the old node and returns it. If no such named node exists, adds the new node to the map and sets old to NULL. This is a non-namespace-aware function; it just matches (case sensitively) on the whole qualified name. Since some node types have fixed names (Text, Comment, and so on), trying to set another of the same type will always cause replacement.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmldomSetNamedItem(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map,
    xmlnode *newNode);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap
newNode	IN	new node to store in map

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) the replaced node (or NULL)

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetNamedItemNS\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNamedItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNamedItemNS\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodeMapItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#)

## XmlDomSetNamedItemNS()

Adds a new node to a NamedNodeMap. If a node already exists with the given URI and localname, replaces the old node and returns it. If no such named node exists, adds the new node to the map and sets old to NULL. Since some node types have fixed names (Text, Comment, and so on), trying to set another of the same type will always cause replacement.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomSetNamedItemNS (
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map,
    xmlnode *newNode);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap
newNode	IN	new node to store in map

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) replaced Node [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetNamedItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNamedItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNamedItemNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeMapItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#)

## Node Interface

Table 3–8 summarizes the methods available through the Node interface.

**Table 3–8 Summary of Node Methods; DOM Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomAppendChild()</a> on page 3-55	Append new child to node's list of children.
<a href="#">XmlDomCleanNode()</a> on page 3-55	Clean a node (free DOM allocations).
<a href="#">XmlDomCloneNode()</a> on page 3-55	Clone a node.
<a href="#">XmlDomFreeNode()</a> on page 3-56	Free a node allocated with <code>XmlDomCreateXXX</code> .
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrs()</a> on page 3-56	Return attributes of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetChildNodes()</a> on page 3-57	Return children of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDefaultNS()</a> on page 3-57	Get default namespace for node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetFirstChild()</a> on page 3-58	Returns first child of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetFirstPfnsPair()</a> on page 3-58	Get first prefix namespace pair.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetLastChild()</a> on page 3-59	Returns last child of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNextPfnsPair()</a> on page 3-59	Get subsequent prefix namespace pair.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNextSibling()</a> on page 3-60	Return next sibling of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeLocal()</a> on page 3-60	Get local part of node's qualified name as NULL-terminated string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen()</a> on page 3-60	Get local part of node's qualified name as length-encoded string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetnodeName()</a> on page 3-61	Get node's name as NULL-terminated string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetnodeNameLen()</a> on page 3-62	Get node's name as length-encoded string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodePrefix()</a> on page 3-63	Return namespace prefix of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeType()</a> on page 3-63	Get node's numeric type code.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeURI()</a> on page 3-64	Return namespace URI of node as a NULL-terminated string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeURILen()</a> on page 3-64	Return namespace URI of node as length-encoded string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetnodeValue()</a> on page 3-65	Get node's value as NULL-terminated string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetnodeValueLen()</a> on page 3-66	Get node value as length-encoded string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetnodeValueStream()</a> on page 3-66	Returns the large data for a node and sends it in pieces to the user's output stream.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetOwnerDocument()</a> on page 3-67	Get the owner document of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetParentNode()</a> on page 3-67	Get parent node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetPrevSibling()</a> on page 3-68	Return previous sibling of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream()</a> on page 3-68	Returns the address of a binary stream using the pull paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream()</a> on page 3-68	Returns the address of a character stream using the pull paradigm.

**Table 3–8 (Cont.) Summary of Node Methods; DOM Package**

<b>Function</b>	<b>Summary</b>
<a href="#">XmlNodeGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream()</a> on page 3-69	Returns the address of a binary stream, as an OUT <code>ostream</code> parameter, using the push paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlNodeGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream()</a> on page 3-69	Returns the address of a character stream, as an OUT <code>ostream</code> parameter, using the push paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlNodeGetSourceEntity()</a> on page 3-70	Return the entity node if the input file is an external entity.
<a href="#">XmlNodeGetSourceLine()</a> on page 3-70	Return source line number of node.
<a href="#">XmlNodeGetSourceLocation()</a> on page 3-70	Return source location (path, URI, and so on) of node.
<a href="#">XmlNodeHasAttr()</a> on page 3-41	Does named attribute exist?
<a href="#">XmlNodeHasChildNodes()</a> on page 3-71	Test if node has children.
<a href="#">XmlNodeInsertBefore()</a> on page 3-71	Insert new child in to node's list of children.
<a href="#">XmlNodeNormalize()</a> on page 3-72	Normalize a node by merging adjacent text nodes.
<a href="#">XmlNodeNumAttrs()</a> on page 3-72	Return number of attributes of element.
<a href="#">XmlNodeNumChildNodes()</a> on page 3-73	Return number of children of node.
<a href="#">XmlNodePrefixToURI()</a> on page 3-73	Get namespace URI for prefix.
<a href="#">XmlNodeRemoveChild()</a> on page 3-74	Remove an existing child node.
<a href="#">XmlNodeRenameNode()</a> on page 3-74	Updates the name of a node, for element and attribute nodes only.
<a href="#">XmlNodeRenameNodeNS()</a> on page 3-74	Updates the name and URI of a node, for element and attribute nodes only.
<a href="#">XmlNodeReplaceChild()</a> on page 3-75	Replace an existing child of a node.
<a href="#">XmlNodeSetDefaultNS()</a> on page 3-76	Set default namespace for node.
<a href="#">XmlNodeSetNodePrefix()</a> on page 3-76	Set namespace prefix of node.
<a href="#">XmlNodeSetnodeValue()</a> on page 3-76	Set node value.
<a href="#">XmlNodeSetnodeValueLen()</a> on page 3-77	Set node value as length-encoded string.
<a href="#">XmlNodeSetnodeValueStream()</a> on page 3-77	Sets the large "value" (character data) for a node piecemeal from an input stream.
<a href="#">XmlNodeSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream()</a> on page 3-78	Returns the address of a binary input stream, as an OUT <code>istream</code> parameter, using the pull paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlNodeSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream()</a> on page 3-78	Returns the address of an input character stream, as an OUT <code>istream</code> parameter, using the pull paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlNodeSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream()</a> on page 3-79	Returns the address of an input binary stream using the push paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlNodeSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream()</a> on page 3-79	Returns the address of a character stream using the push paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlNodeValidate()</a> on page 3-79	Validate a node against current DTD.

## XmldomAppendChild()

Appends the node to the end of the parent's list of children and returns the new node. If newChild is a DocumentFragment, all of its children are appended in original order; the DocumentFragment node itself is not.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmldomAppendChild(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *parent,
    xmlnode *newChild);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
parent	IN	parent to receive a new node
newChild	IN	node to add

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) node added

**See Also:** [XmldomInsertBefore\(\)](#), [XmldomReplaceChild\(\)](#)

## XmldomCleanNode()

Frees parts of the node which were allocated by DOM itself, but does not recurse to children or touch the node's attributes. After freeing part of the node (such as name), a DOM call to get that part (such as XmldomGetnodeName) should return a NULL pointer. Used to manage the allocations of a node parts of which are controlled by DOM, and part by the user. Calling clean frees all allocations may by DOM and leaves the user's allocations alone. The user is responsible for freeing their own allocations.

### Syntax

```
void XmldomCleanNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	node to clean

**See Also:** [XmldomFreeNode\(\)](#)

## XmldomCloneNode()

Creates and returns a duplicate of a node. The duplicate node has no parent. Cloning an element copies all attributes and their values, including those generated by the XML processor to represent defaulted attributes, but it does not copy any text it contains unless it is a deep clone, since the text is contained in a child text node.

Cloning any other type of node simply returns a copy of the node. Note that a clone of an unspecified attribute node is specified. If deep is TRUE, all children of the node are recursively cloned, and the cloned node will have cloned children; a non-deep clone will have no children.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmIDomCloneNode(
    xmctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    boolean deep);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
deep	IN	TRUE to recursively clone children

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) duplicate (cloned) node

**See Also:** [XmIDomImportNode\(\)](#)

## XmIDomFreeNode()

Free a node allocated with XmIDomCreateXXX. Frees all resources associated with a node, then frees the node itself. Certain parts of the node are under DOM control, and some parts may be under user control. DOM keeps flags tracking who owns what, and only frees its own allocations. The user is responsible for freeing their own parts of the node before calling XmIDomFreeNode.

### Syntax

```
void XmIDomFreeNode(
    xmctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node to free

**See Also:** [XmIDomCleanNode\(\)](#)

## XmIDomGetAttrs()

Returns a NamedNodeMap of attributes of an element node, or NULL if it has no attributes. For other node types, NULL is returned. Note that if an element once had attributes, but they have all been removed, an empty list will be returned. So, presence of the list does not mean the element has attributes. You must check the size of the list with XmIDomNumAttrs or use XmIDomHasChildNodes first.

## Syntax

```
xmlnamedmap* XmlDomGetAttrs(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	XML element node

## Returns

(xmlnamedmap \*) NamedNodeMap of node's attributes

**See Also:** [XmlDomNumAttrs\(\)](#), [XmlDomHasChildNodes\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetChildNodes()

Returns a list of the node's children, or NULL if it has no children. Only Element, Document, DTD, and DocumentFragment nodes may have children; all other types will return NULL.

Note that an empty list may be returned if the node once had children, but all have been removed! That is, the list may exist but have no members. So, presence of the list alone does not mean the node has children. You must check the size of the list with `XmlDomNumChildNodes` or use `XmlDomHasChildNodes` first.

The `xmlnodelist` structure is opaque and can only be manipulated with functions in the `NodeList` interface.

The returned list is live; all changes in the original node are reflected immediately.

## Syntax

```
xmlnodelist* XmlDomGetChildNodes(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

## Returns

(xmlnodelist \*) live NodeList containing all children of node

## XmlDomGetDefaultNS()

Gets the default namespace for a node.

## Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetDefaultNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	element or attribute DOM node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) default namespace for node [data encoding; may be NULL]

**XmlDomGetFirstChild()**

Returns the first child of a node, or NULL if the node has no children. Only Element, Document, DTD, and DocumentFragment nodes may have children; all other types will return NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetFirstChild(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) first child of node

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetLastChild\(\)](#), [XmlDomHasChildNodes\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetChildNodes\(\)](#), [XmlDomNumChildNodes\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetFirstPfnsPair()**

This function is to allow implementations an opportunity to speedup the iteration of all available prefix-URI bindings available on a given node. It returns a state structure and the prefix and URI of the first prefix-URI mapping. The state structure should be passed to `XmlDomGetNextPfnsPair` on the remaining pairs.

**Syntax**

```
xmlpfnspair* XmlDomGetFirstPfnsPair(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext **prefix,
    oratext **uri);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
prefix	OUT	prefix of first mapping; data encoding
uri	OUT	URI of first mapping; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlpfnspair \*) iterating object or NULL of no prefixes

**XmldomGetLastChild()**

Returns the last child of a node, or NULL if the node has no children. Only Element, Document, DTD, and DocumentFragment nodes may have children; all other types will return NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmldomGetLastChild(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) last child of node

**See Also:** [XmldomGetFirstChild\(\)](#), [XmldomHasChildNodes\(\)](#),  
[XmldomGetChildNodes\(\)](#), [XmldomNumChildNodes\(\)](#)

**XmldomGetNextPfnsPair()**

This function is to allow implementations an opportunity to speedup the iteration of all available prefix-URI bindings available on a given node. Given an iterator structure from XmldomGetFirstPfnsPair, returns the next prefix-URI mapping; repeat calls to XmldomGetNextPfnsPair until NULL is returned.

**Syntax**

```
xmlpfnspair* XmldomGetNextPfnsPair(
    xmlctx *xctx
    xmlpfnspair *pfns,
    oratext **prefix,
    oratext **uri);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
prefix	OUT	prefix of next mapping; data encoding
uri	OUT	URI of next mapping; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlpfnspair \*) iterating object, NULL when no more pairs

## XmlDomGetNextSibling()

Returns the node following a node at the same level in the DOM tree. That is, for each child of a parent node, the next sibling of that child is the child which comes after it. If a node is the last child of its parent, or has no parent, NULL is returned.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetNextSibling(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) node immediately following node at same level

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetPrevSibling\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetNodeLocal()

Returns the namespace local name for a node as a NULL-terminated string. If the node's name is not fully qualified (has no prefix), then the local name is the same as the name.

A length-encoded version is available as `XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen` which returns the local name as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use `XMLType` backing store.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetNodeLocal(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

### Returns

(oratext \*) local name of node [data encoding]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodePrefix\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeURI\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen()

Returns the namespace local name for a node as a length-encoded string. If the node's name is not fully qualified (has no prefix), then the local name is the same as the name.

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmldomGetNodeLocal` which returns the local name as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be `XMLType`, then the node's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based Get functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

If both the input buffer is non-NULL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than `buflen`, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and `len` will return the actual length.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmldomGetNodeLocalLen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>node</code>	IN	XML node
<code>buf</code>	IN	input buffer; optional
<code>buflen</code>	IN	input buffer length; optional
<code>len</code>	OUT	length of local name, in characters

### Returns

(`oratext *`) local name of node [data encoding]

**See Also:** [XmldomGetNodeLocal\(\)](#), [XmldomGetNodePrefix\(\)](#), [XmldomGetNodeURILen\(\)](#)

## XmldomGetnodeName()

Returns the (fully-qualified) name of a node (in the data encoding) as a NULL-terminated string, for example `bar\0` or `foo:bar\0`.

Note that some node types have fixed names: "#text", "#cdata-section", "#comment", "#document", "#document-fragment".

A node's name cannot be changed once it is created, so there is no matching `SetnodeName` function.

A length-based version is available as `XmldomGetnodeNameLen` which returns the node name as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use `XMLType` backing store.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmldomGetnodeName(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) name of node [data encoding]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetNodeNameLen\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetNodeNameLen()

Returns the (fully-qualified) name of a node (in the data encoding) as a length-encoded string, for example "bar", 3 or "foo:bar", 7.

Note that some node types have fixed names: "#text", "#cdata-section", "#comment", "#document", "#document-fragment".

A node's name cannot be changed once it is created, so there is no matching SetNodeName function.

A NULL-terminated version is available as XmlDomGetnodeName which returns the node name as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be XMLType, then the node's name will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-encoded GetXXX functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the name.

If both the input buffer is non-NUL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than buflen, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and len will return the actual length.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetNodeNameLen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
buf	IN	input buffer; optional
buflen	IN	input buffer length; optional
len	OUT	length of name, in characters

**Returns**

(oratext \*) name of node, with length of name set in 'len'

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetnodeName\(\)](#)

## **XmIDomGetNodePrefix()**

Returns the namespace prefix for a node (as a NULL-terminated string). If the node's name is not fully qualified (has no prefix), NULL is returned.

### **Syntax**

```
oratext* XmIDomGetNodePrefix(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

### **Returns**

(oratext \*) namespace prefix of node [data encoding; may be NULL]

## **XmIDomGetNodeType()**

Returns the type code of a node. The type names and numeric values match the DOM specification:

- ELEMENT\_NODE=1
- ATTRIBUTE\_NODE=2
- TEXT\_NODE=3
- CDATA\_SECTION\_NODE=4
- ENTITY\_REFERENCE\_NODE=5
- ENTITY\_NODE=6
- PROCESSING\_INSTRUCTION\_NODE=7
- COMMENT\_NODE=8
- DOCUMENT\_NODE=9
- DOCUMENT\_TYPE\_NODE=10
- DOCUMENT\_FRAGMENT\_NODE=11
- NOTATION\_NODE=12

Additional Oracle extension node types are as follows:

- ELEMENT\_DECL\_NODE
- ATTR\_DECL\_NODE
- CP\_ELEMENT\_NODE
- CP\_CHOICE\_NODE
- CP\_PCDATA\_NODE
- CP\_STAR\_NODE
- CP\_PLUS\_NODE

- CP\_OPT\_NODE

### Syntax

```
xmlnodetype XmlDomGetNodeType(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

### Returns

(xmlnodetype) numeric type-code of the node

## XmlDomGetNodeURI()

Returns the namespace URI for a node (in the data encoding) as a NULL-terminated string. If the node's name is not qualified (does not contain a namespace prefix), it will have the default namespace in effect when the node was created (which may be NULL).

A length-encoded version is available as `XmlDomGetNodeURILen` which returns the URI as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use XMLType backing store.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetNodeURI(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

### Returns

(oratext \*) namespace URI of node [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetNodeURILen\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodePrefix\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeLocal\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetNodeURILen()

Returns the namespace URI for a node (in the data encoding) as length-encoded string. If the node's name is not qualified (does not contain a namespace prefix), it will have the default namespace in effect when the node was created (which may be NULL).

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmlDomGetNodeURI` which returns the URI value as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be XMLType, then the node's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based Get functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

If both the input buffer is non-NULL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than buflen, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and len will return the actual length.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetNodeURILen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
buf	IN	input buffer; optional
buflen	IN	input buffer length; optional
len	OUT	length of URI, in characters

### Returns

(oratext \*) namespace URI of node [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetNodeURI\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodePrefix\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeLocal\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetnodeValue()

Returns the "value" (associated character data) for a node as a NULL-terminated string. Character and general entities will have been replaced. Only Attr, CDATA, Comment, ProcessingInstruction and Text nodes have values, all other node types have NULL value.

A length-encoded version is available as `XmlDomGetnodeValueLen` which returns the node value as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use `XMLType` backing store.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetnodeValue(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

### Returns

(oratext \*) value of node

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetnodeValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetnodeValueLen\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetnodeValueLen()

Returns the "value" (associated character data) for a node as a length-encoded string. Character and general entities will have been replaced. Only Attr, CDATA, Comment, PI and Text nodes have values, all other node types have NULL value.

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmlDomGetnodeValue` which returns the node value as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be XMLType, then the node's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based Get functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

If both the input buffer is non-NULL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than `buflen`, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and `len` will return the actual length.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetnodeValueLen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>node</code>	IN	XML node
<code>buf</code>	IN	input buffer; optional
<code>buflen</code>	IN	input buffer length; optional
<code>len</code>	OUT	length of value, in bytes

### Returns

`(oratext *)` value of node

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetnodeValueLen\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetnodeValue\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetnodeValueStream()

Returns the large data for a node and sends it in pieces to the user's output stream. For very large values, it is not always possible to store them [efficiently] as a single contiguous chunk. This function is used to access chunked data of that type. Only XMLType chunks its data (sometimes); XDK's data is always contiguous.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomGetnodeValueStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
```

---

```
xmlostream *ostream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
ostream	IN	output stream object

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetNodeValueStream\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodeValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeValueLen\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetOwnerDocument()**

Returns the Document node associated with a node. Each node may belong to only one document, or may not be associated with any document at all (such as immediately after `XmlDomCreateElem`, and so on). The "owning" document [node] is returned, or NULL for an orphan node.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetOwnerDocument(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) document node is in

**XmlDomGetParentNode()**

Returns a node's parent node. All nodes types except Attr, Document, DocumentFragment, Entity, and Notation may have a parent (these five exceptions always have a NULL parent). If a node has just been created but not yet added to the DOM tree, or if it has been removed from the DOM tree, its parent is also NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetParentNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) parent of node

## **XmIDomGetPrevSibling()**

Returns the node preceding a node at the same level in the DOM tree. That is, for each child of a parent node, the previous sibling of that child is the child which came before it. If a node is the first child of its parent, or has no parent, NULL is returned.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmIDomGetPrevSibling(  
    xmldctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) node immediately preceding node at same level

**See Also:** [XmIDomGetNextSibling\(\)](#)

## **XmIDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream()**

Returns the address of a binary stream using the pull paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
orastream *XmIDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream(  
    xmldctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; may be RAW or BLOB, otherwise the function returns NULL

**Returns**

(orastream \*) the readable binary stream; use OraStreamRead() on the output, not OraStreamReadChar()

## **XmIDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream()**

Returns the address of a character stream using the pull paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
orastream *XmIDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream(  
    xmldctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; may be any type supported by XML DB

**Returns**

(orastream \*) the readable character stream; use OraStreamReadChar () on the output, not OraStreamRead () .

**XmIDomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream()**

Returns the address of a binary stream, as an OUT ostream parameter, using the push paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmIDomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    orastream *ostream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; may be RAW or BLOB, otherwise returns an error
ostream	OUT	application implementation of orastream; use OraStreamWriter () to write the value, not OraStreamWriterChar ()

**Returns**

(xmlerr \*) error code, XMLERR\_OK [] on success

**XmIDomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream()**

Returns the address of a character stream, as an OUT ostream parameter, using the push paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmIDomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    orastream *ostream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; any type supported by XML DB
ostream	IN	application implementation of orastream; use OraStreamWriterChar () to write the value, not OraStreamWriter ()

**Returns**

(xmlerr \*) error code, XMLERR\_OK [] on success

**XmlDomGetSourceEntity()**

Returns the external entity node whose inclusion caused the creation of the given node.

**Syntax**

```
xmlentnode* XmlDomGetSourceEntity(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlentnode \*) entity node if the input is from an external entity

**XmlDomGetSourceLine()**

Returns the line# in the original source where the node started. The first line in every input is line #1.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlDomGetSourceLine(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(ub4) line number of node in original input source

**XmlDomGetSourceLocation()**

Return source location (path, URI, and so on) of node. Note this will be in the compiler encoding, not the data encoding!

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetSourceLocation(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) full path of input source [in compiler encoding]

**XmldomHasAttrs()**

Test if an element has attributes. Returns TRUE if any attributes of any sort are defined (namespace or regular).

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmldomHasAttrs(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	XML element node

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE if element has attributes

**XmldomHasChildNodes()**

Test if a node has children. Only Element, Document, DTD, and DocumentFragment nodes may have children. Note that just because XmldomGetChildNodes returns a list does not mean the node actually has children, since the list may be empty, so a non-NULL return from XmldomGetChildNodes should not be used as a test.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmldomHasChildNodes(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE if the node has any children

**XmldomInsertBefore()**

Inserts the node newChild before the existing child node refChild in the parent node. If refChild is NULL, appends to parent's children as for each

`XmIDomAppendChild`; otherwise it must be a child of the given parent. If `newChild` is a `DocumentFragment`, all of its children are inserted (in the same order) before `refChild`; the `DocumentFragment` node itself is not. If `newChild` is already in the DOM tree, it is first removed from its current position.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmIDomInsertBefore(
    xmldctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *parent,
    xmlnode *newChild,
    xmlnode *refChild);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
parent	IN	parent that receives a new child
newChild	IN	node to insert
refChild	IN	reference node

### Returns

(`xmlnode *`) node being inserted

**See Also:** [XmIDomAppendChild\(\)](#), [XmIDomReplaceChild\(\)](#), [XmIDomRemoveChild\(\)](#)

## XmIDomNormalize()

Normalizes the subtree rooted at an element, merges adjacent `Text` nodes children of elements. Note that adjacent `Text` nodes will never be created during a normal parse, only after manipulation of the document with DOM calls.

### Syntax

```
void XmIDomNormalize(
    xmldctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

## XmIDomNumAttrs()

Returns the number of attributes of an element. Note that just because a list is returned by `XmIDomGetAttrs` does not mean it contains any attributes; it may be an empty list with zero length.

### Syntax

```
ub4 XmIDomNumAttrs(
    xmldctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	XML element node

**Returns**

(ub4) number of attributes of node

**XmldomNumChildNodes()**

Returns the number of children of a node. Only Element, Document, DTD, and DocumentFragment nodes may have children, all other types return 0. Note that just because XmldomGetChildNodes returns a list does not mean that it contains any children; it may be an empty list with zero length.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmldomNumChildNodes(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(ub4) number of children of node

**XmldomPrefixToURI()**

Given a namespace prefix and a node, returns the namespace URI mapped to that prefix. If the given node doesn't have a matching prefix, its parent is tried, then its parent, and so on, all the way to the root node. If the prefix is undefined, NULL is returned.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmldomPrefixToURI(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *prefix);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
prefix	IN	prefix to map

**Returns**

(oratext \*) URI for prefix [data encoding; NULL if no match]

## XmlDomRemoveChild()

Removes a node from its parent's list of children and returns it. The node is orphaned; its parent will be NULL after removal.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRemoveChild(
    xmlectx *xctx,
    xmlnode *oldChild);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
oldChild	IN	node to remove

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) node removed

**See Also:** [XmlDomAppendChild\(\)](#), [XmlDomInsertBefore\(\)](#), [XmlDomReplaceChild\(\)](#)

## XmlDomRenameNode()

Updates the name of a node, for element and attribute nodes only.

If the prefix does not have a current mapping, the user should add the mapping by creating an xmlns attribute and associating it with this element node by calling [XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS\(\)](#) on page 3-45. A namespace attribute node cannot be modified.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRenameNode(
    xmlectx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *tagname);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
tagname	IN	The new tagname

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) the changed node

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS\(\)](#)

## XmlDomRenameNodeNS()

Updates the name and URI of a node, for element and attribute nodes only.

If the prefix does not have a current mapping, the user should add the mapping by creating an `xmlns` attribute and associating it with this element node by calling [XmlNodeSetAttrNodeNS\(\)](#) on page 3-45. A namespace attribute node cannot be modified.

## Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlNodeRenameNodeNS (
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *tagname);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
uri	IN	The new URI; if NULL, retains existing URI
tagname	IN	The new tagname

## Returns

(`xmlnode *`) the changed node.

**See Also:** [XmlNodeSetAttrNodeNS\(\)](#)

## XmlNodeReplaceChild()

Replaces the child node `oldChild` with the new node `newChild` in `oldChild`'s parent, and returns `oldChild` (which is now orphaned, with a NULL parent). If `newChild` is a `DocumentFragment`, all of its children are inserted in place of `oldChild`; the `DocumentFragment` node itself is not. If `newChild` is already in the DOM tree, it is first removed from its current position.

## Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlNodeReplaceChild(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *newChild,
    xmlnode *oldChild);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
newChild	IN	new node that is substituted
oldChild	IN	old node that is replaced

## Returns

(`xmlnode *`) node replaced

**See Also:** [XmlNodeAppendChild\(\)](#), [XmlNodeInsertBefore\(\)](#), [XmlNodeRemoveChild\(\)](#)

## XmlDomSetDefaultNS()

Set the default namespace for a node

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomSetDefaultNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *defns);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	element or attribute DOM node
defns	IN	new default namespace for the node

## XmlDomSetNodePrefix()

Sets the namespace prefix of node (as NULL-terminated string). Does not verify the prefix is defined. Just causes a new qualified name to be formed from the new prefix and the old local name; the new qualified name will be under DOM control and should not be managed by the user.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomSetNodePrefix(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *prefix);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
prefix	OUT	new namespace prefix

## XmlDomSetnodeValue()

Sets a node's value (character data) as a NULL-terminated string. Does not allow setting the value to NULL. Only Attr, CDATA, Comment, PI and Text nodes have values; trying to set the value of another type of node is a no-op. The new value must be in the data encoding. It is not verified, converted, or checked.

The value is not copied, its pointer is just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomSetnodeValue(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *value);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
value	IN	node's new value; data encoding; user control

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetnodeValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetnodeValueLen\(\)](#)

## XmlDomSetnodeValueLen()

Sets the value (associated character data) for a node as a length-encoded string.

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmlDomSetnodeValue` which takes the node value as a NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be `XMLType`, then the node's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based Set functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomSetnodeValueLen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *value,
    ub4 len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
value	IN	node's new value; data encoding; user control
len	IN	length of value, in bytes

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

**See Also:** [XmlDomSetnodeValueLen\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetnodeValue\(\)](#)

## XmlDomSetnodeValueStream()

Sets the large "value" (character data) for a node piecemeal from an input stream. For very large values, it is not always possible to store them [efficiently] as a single contiguous chunk. This function is used to store chunked data of that type. Used only for `XMLType` data; XDK's data is always contiguous.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomSetnodeValueStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    xmistream *istream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
istream	IN	input stream object

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetNodeValueStream\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomSetNodeValue\(\)](#)

**XmIDomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream()**

Returns the address of a binary input stream, as an OUT istream parameter, using the pull paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr *XmIDomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream(
    xmldctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node
    orastream *istream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; may be RAW or BLOB, otherwise returns an error
istream	OUT	input stream object; the method OraStreamRead() must be used to read this value, not OraStreamReadChar()

**Returns**

(xmlerr \*) error code, XMLERR\_OK [] on success

**XmIDomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream()**

Returns the address of an input character stream, as an OUT istream parameter, using the pull paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr *XmIDomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream(
    xmldctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node
    oracharacterinputstream *istream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; may be any type supported by XML DB
istream	OUT	input stream object; the method OraStreamReadChar() must be used to read this value, not OraStreamRead().

**Returns**

(xmlerr \*) error code, XMLERR\_OK [ ] on success

**XmldomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream()**

Returns the address of an input binary stream using the push paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
orastream* XmldomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; may be RAW or BLOB

**Returns**

(orastream \*) the binary stream; to read the output, use OraStreamWrite() instead of OraStreamWriteChar()

**XmldomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream()**

Returns the address of a character stream using the push paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
orastream *XmldomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; any type supported by XML DB

**Returns**

(orastream \*) the character stream; to read the output, use OraStreamWriteChar() instead of OraStreamWrite()

**XmldomValidate()**

Given a root node, validates it against the current DTD.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmldomValidate(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
node	IN	node to validate

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] means node is valid

## NodeList Interface

Table 3–9 summarizes the methods available through the NodeList interface.

**Table 3–9 Summary of NodeList Methods; DOM Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomFreeNodeList()</a> on page 3-81	Free a node list returned by <code>XmlDomGetElemsByTag</code> or related functions, releasing all resources associated with it. If given a node list that is part of the DOM proper (such as the children of a node), does nothing.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeListItem()</a> on page 3-81	Return n <sup>th</sup> node in list.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeListLength()</a> on page 3-82	Return length of node list.

### XmlDomFreeNodeList()

Free a node list returned by `XmlDomGetElemsByTag` or related functions, releasing all resources associated with it. If given a node list that is part of the DOM proper (such as the children of a node), does nothing.

#### Syntax

```
void XmlDomFreeNodeList(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode*list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
list	IN	NodeList to free

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetElemsByTag\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetChildrenByTag\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS\(\)](#)

### XmlDomGetNodeListItem()

Return nth node in a node list. The first item is index 0.

#### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetNodeListItem(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode*list,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
list	IN	NodeList
index	IN	index into list

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) node at the nth position in node list [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetNodeListLength\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetNodeListLength()

Returns the number of nodes in a node list (its length). Note that nodes are referred to by index, so the range of valid indexes is 0 through `length-1`.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlDomGetNodeListLength(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnodelist *list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
list	IN	NodeList

**Returns**

(ub4) number of nodes in node list

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetNodeListItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

## Notation Interface

[Table 3–10](#) summarizes the methods available through the Notation interface.

**Table 3–10 Summary of NodeList Methods; DOM Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNotationPubID()</a> on page 3-83	Get notation's public ID
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNotationSysID()</a> on page 3-83	Get notation's system ID.

### XmlDomGetNotationPubID()

Return a notation's public identifier (in the data encoding).

#### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetNotationPubID(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnotenode *note);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
note	IN	Notation node

#### Returns

(oratext \*) notation's public identifier [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetNotationSysID\(\)](#)

### XmlDomGetNotationSysID()

Return a notation's system identifier (in the data encoding).

#### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetNotationSysID(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnotenode *note);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
note	IN	Notation node

#### Returns

(oratext \*) notation's system identifier [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetNotationPubID\(\)](#)

## ProcessingInstruction Interface

[Table 3–11](#) summarizes the methods available through the ProcessingInstruction interface.

**Table 3–11 Summary of ProcessingInstruction Methods; DOM Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetPIData()</a> on page 3-84	Get processing instruction's data.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetPITarget()</a> on page 3-84	Get PI's target.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetPIData()</a> on page 3-85	Set processing instruction's data.

### XmlDomGetPIData()

Returns the content (data) of a processing instruction (in the data encoding). If the node is not a `ProcessingInstruction`, returns `NULL`. The content is the part from the first non-whitespace character after the target until the ending "`?>`".

#### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetPIData(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *pi);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
pi	IN	ProcessingInstruction node

#### Returns

(`oratext *`) processing instruction's data [data encoding]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetPITarget\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetPIData\(\)](#)

### XmlDomGetPITarget()

Returns a processing instruction's target string. If the node is not a `ProcessingInstruction`, returns `NULL`. The target is the first token following the markup that begins the `ProcessingInstruction`. All `ProcessingInstructions` must have a target, though the data part is optional.

#### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetPITarget(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *pi);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
pi	IN	ProcessingInstruction node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) processing instruction's target [data encoding]

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetPIData\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetPIData\(\)](#)**XmlDomSetPIData()**

Sets a ProcessingInstruction's content, which must be in the data encoding. It is not permitted to set the data to NULL. If the node is not a ProcessingInstruction, does nothing. The new data is not verified, converted, or checked.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlDomSetPIData(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlpinode *pi,
    oratext *data);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
pi	IN	ProcessingInstruction node
data	IN	ProcessingInstruction's new data; data encoding

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetPITarget\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetPIData\(\)](#)

## Text Interface

---

Table 3–12 summarizes the methods available through the Text interface.

**Table 3–12 Summary of Text Methods; DOM Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomSplitText() on page 3-86</a>	Split text node in to two.

### **XmlDomSplitText()**

Splits a single text node into two text nodes; the original data is split between them. If the given node is not type text, or the offset is outside of the original data, does nothing and returns NULL. The offset is zero-based, and is in characters, not bytes. The original node is retained, its data is just truncated. A new text node is created which contains the remainder of the original data, and is inserted as the next sibling of the original. The new text node is returned.

#### **Syntax**

```
xmltextnode* XmlDomSplitText(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmltextnode *textnode,  
    ub4 offset);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
textnode	IN	Text node
offset	IN	0-based character count at which to split text

#### **Returns**

(xmltextnode \*) new text node

**See Also:** [XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#), [XmlDomAppendData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomInsertData\(\)](#), [XmlDomDeleteData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomReplaceData\(\)](#)

# 4

---

## Package Event APIs for C

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Event Interface](#)

**See Also:**

- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

## Event Interface

Table 4–1 summarizes the methods available through the Event interface.

**Table 4–1 Summary of Event Methods**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlEvCleanPPCtx() on page 4-5</a>	Cleans up internal structures related to a parse operation. This will not destroy the event context. The event context can be reused after this call.
<a href="#">XmlEvCreatePPCtx() on page 4-6</a>	Creates an Event context in pull-parse mode.
<a href="#">XmlEvCreateSVCtx() on page 4-7</a>	Creates an event context for the streaming validator.
<a href="#">XmlEvDestroyPPCtx() on page 4-8</a>	Destroys the event context. Terminates parsing. May be called at any time during a parsing operation.
<a href="#">XmlEvDestroySVCtx() on page 4-8</a>	Terminates an event context created by a streaming validator.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrCount() on page 4-9</a>	Retrieves the number of attributes for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT event.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody() on page 4-9</a>	Retrieves the attribute body in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0() on page 4-9</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute body in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount() on page 4-10</a>	Retrieves the number of attributes in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName() on page 4-10</a>	Retrieves the element name in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName0() on page 4-10</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated element name in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName() on page 4-11</a>	Retrieves the local name in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0() on page 4-11</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated local name in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclName() on page 4-11</a>	Retrieves the attribute name in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclName0() on page 4-12</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute name in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix() on page 4-13</a>	Retrieves the attribute prefix in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0() on page 4-13</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute prefix in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrID() on page 4-13</a>	Retrieves the ID for the attribute's QNAME, for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.

**Table 4-1 (Cont.) Summary of Event Methods**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrLocalName()</a> on page 4-13	Retrieves the attribute local name for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0()</a> on page 4-14	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute name for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrName()</a> on page 4-14	Retrieves the attribute name for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrName0()</a> on page 4-14	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute name for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrPrefix()</a> on page 4-15	Retrieves the prefix tag for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0()</a> on page 4-15	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute prefix for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrURI()</a> on page 4-16	Retrieves the attribute URI for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrURI0()</a> on page 4-16	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute URI for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrUriID()</a> on page 4-16	Retrieves the ID for the attribute's URI, for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrValue()</a> on page 4-17	Retrieves the attribute value for one of the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrValue0()</a> on page 4-17	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute value for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetElDeclContent()</a> on page 4-17	Retrieves the element declaration content for XML_EVENT_ELEMENT_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetElDeclContent0()</a> on page 4-18	Retrieves the element declaration content for XML_EVENT_ELEMENT_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetEncoding()</a> on page 4-18	Returns the value of the encoding specified.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetError()</a> on page 4-18	Retrieves the error number when the XML_EVENT_FATAL_ERROR or XML_EVENT_ERROR event is returned by an <a href="#">XmlEvNext()</a>
<a href="#">XmlEvGetName()</a> on page 4-19	Returns the name of for either XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events, and the length of the event in the OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetName0()</a> on page 4-19	Retrieves a NULL-terminated name for either XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events
<a href="#">XmlEvGetLocalName()</a> on page 4-20	Retrieves the local name tag for either XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:
<a href="#">XmlEvGetLocalName0()</a> on page 4-20	Retrieves a NULL-terminated local name tag for either XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:

**Table 4–1 (Cont.) Summary of Event Methods**

<b>Function</b>	<b>Summary</b>
<a href="#">XmlEvGetLocation()</a> on page 4-21	Retrieves the location during parsing, as OUT parameters for the line number of the input stream and its path.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPIData()</a> on page 4-21	Retrieves the text for XML_EVENT_PI or XML_EVENT_PI_CONT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetP IData0()</a> on page 4-21	Retrieves NULL-terminated text for XML_EVENT_PI or XML_EVENT_PI_CONT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPITarget()</a> on page 4-22	Retrieves the target for XML_EVENT_PI and XML_EVENT_PI_CONT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPITarget0()</a> on page 4-22	Retrieves the NULL-terminated target for XML_EVENT_PI and XML_EVENT_PI_CONT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPEIsGen()</a> on page 4-22	Determines if the general entity was declared, XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPERepl()</a> on page 4-23	Retrieves the replacement text of PE declaration, XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPERepl0()</a> on page 4-23	Retrieves the NULL-terminated replacement text of PE declaration, XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPrefix()</a> on page 4-23	Retrieves the prefix tag for one of either XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPrefix0()</a> on page 4-24	Retrieves the prefix tag for one of either XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events..
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPubId()</a> on page 4-24	Retrieves the public id for XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION, XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION, or XML_EVENT_NOTATION_DECLARATION events; also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPubId0()</a> on page 4-25	Retrieves the NULL-terminated public id for XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION, XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION, or XML_EVENT_NOTATION_DECLARATION events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetSysId()</a> on page 4-25	Retrieves the system id for XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION, XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION, or XML_EVENT_NOTATION_DECLARATION events; also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetSysId0()</a> on page 4-25	Retrieves the NULL-terminated system id for XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION, XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION, or XML_EVENT_NOTATION_DECLARATION events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetTagID()</a> on page 4-26	Retrieves the ID for the tag's QNAME, for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetTagUriID()</a> on page 4-26	Retrieves the ID for the tag's URI, for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT and XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events.

**Table 4-1 (Cont.) Summary of Event Methods**

<b>Function</b>	<b>Summary</b>
<a href="#">XmlEvGetText()</a> on page 4-26	Retrieves the text for XML_EVENT_CHARACTERS, XML_EVENT_CHARACTERS_CONT, XML_EVENT_SPACE, XML_EVENT_SPACE_CONT, XML_EVENT_COMMENT, XML_EVENT_COMMENT_CONT, XML_EVENT_CDATA, and XML_EVENT_CDATA_CONT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetText0()</a> on page 4-27	Retrieves the NULL-terminated text for XML_EVENT_CHARACTERS, XML_EVENT_CHARACTERS_CONT, XML_EVENT_SPACE, XML_EVENT_SPACE_CONT, XML_EVENT_COMMENT, XML_EVENT_COMMENT_CONT, XML_EVENT_CDATA, and XML_EVENT_CDATA_CONT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetUENdata()</a> on page 4-28	Retrieves the ndata for XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION event, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetUENdata0()</a> on page 4-28	Retrieves the NULL-terminated ndata for XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION event.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetURI()</a> on page 4-28	Retrieves the URI tag for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetURI0()</a> on page 4-29	Retrieves the NULL-terminated URI tag for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetVersion()</a> on page 4-29	Provides information about version specification in XML declaration for the XML_EVENT_START_DOCUMENT event.
<a href="#">XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified()</a> on page 4-29	Provides information about encoding specification in XML declaration for the XML_EVENT_START_DOCUMENT event.
<a href="#">XmlEvIsNamespaceAttr()</a> on page 4-30	Determines if an attribute is a namespace attribute for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT event.
<a href="#">XmlEvIsStandalone()</a> on page 4-30	Provides information about standalone specification in XML declaration for the XML_EVENT_START_DOCUMENT event
<a href="#">XmlEvNext()</a> on page 4-30	Gets the next event and advances the parser.
<a href="#">XmlEvNextTag()</a> on page 4-31	Advances the parser to the next tag event.
<a href="#">XmlEvLoadPPDoc()</a> on page 4-31	Loads a new document and configures it for pull parsing.
<a href="#">XmlEvSchemaValidate()</a> on page 4-31	Validates XML documents represented by events.

## **XmlEvCleanPPCtx()**

Cleans up internal structures related to a parse operation. This will not destroy the event context. The event context can be reused after this call.

### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlEvCleanPPCtx(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
evtx	IN	XmlEvents context

**Returns**

(xmlerr) the error number

**XmlEvCreatePPCtx()**

Creates an Event context in pull-parse mode.

The document is loaded using XmlEvLoadPPDoc. The actual parsing is driven by multiple calls to [XmlEvNext\(\)](#). After each call, relevant information may be retrieved by calls to the various `XmlEvGetXXX()` functions. Basic set of properties are the same as for `XmlLoadDom`. Input source should be specified with [XmlEvLoadPPDoc\(\)](#) call.

**Syntax**

```
xmlevctx *XmlEvCreatePPCtx(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlerr *xerr,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
xerr	IN	numeric error code, XMLERR_OK[0] on success

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<i>list</i>	IN	<p>These additional properties should be supplied with a terminal NULL:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ ("expand_entities", boolean) that, when FALSE, causes parsed non-parameter entity references not be expanded. By default such references are expanded.</li> <li>▪ ("use_buffer", buffer) is the address of a buffer that when specified, will use the buffer to collect data that should be returned back to the user. The <code>getXXX()</code> functions will return this buffer as a data pointer.</li> <li>▪ ("use_buffer_len", lengthOfBuffer) is the number of bytes in a buffer, the actual length of the buffer, and no more than the specified length is collected. In the case, only part of the data is collected, generating the CONT flavor of the event is generated. Subsequent calls to <code>XmlEventsNext</code> provide additional data. Sequence of CONT-flavored events is always terminated by a non -CONT event. The buffer may be only partially filled.</li> <li>▪ ("get_id_callback", function) is the address for the callback function, to convert text base names to 8-byte IDs. Once such function is supplied, the user is allowed to use <code>XmlEvGetTagID</code>, <code>XmlEvGetAttrID</code>, <code>XmlEvGetTagUriID</code>, and <code>XmlEvGetAttrUriID</code>.</li> <li>▪ ("raw_buffer_len", length) is the number of bytes in a buffer. By default, this parameter is 256K. Raw buffer is used to read the input data and perform character conversion, and also to convert CRLFs and CRs to LFs.</li> <li>▪ ("error_callback", callback) provides the address of a callback function that is invoked to signal illegal use of an API for that event.</li> </ul> <p>These optional parameters should be used in the following manner:</p> <pre>xmlevctx *XmlEvCreatePPCtx(     xmlevctx *xctx,     xmlerr *xerr,     ("expand_entities", mode),     ("use_buffer", buffer),     ("use_buffer_len", length),     ("get_id_callback", function),     ("raw_buffer_len", length),     ("error_callback", callback) );</pre>

## Returns

(`xmlevctx`) Event context to be passed on subsequent calls to [XmlEvNext\(\)](#)

## **XmlEvCreateSVCtx()**

Creates an event context for the streaming validator. Initializes the streaming validator and returns an event context that can be used in subsequent calls.

Use in conjunction with [XmlEvDestroySVCtx\(\)](#) on page 4-8. This is a transparent method. An alternate approach would be to use the opaque [XmlEvSchemaValidate\(\)](#) on page 4-31.

## Syntax

`xmlevctx *XmlEvCreateSVCtx(`

---

```
xmlctx *xctx,
xsdctx *sctx,
xmlevctx *docEvCtx,
xmlerr *err);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context; must be valid
sctx	IN	Schema context; must be valid
docEvCtx	IN	Event context for the document that is validated
err	OUT	numeric error code, XMLERR_OK [ 0 ] on success

**Returns**

(xmlevctx) Event context to be passed on subsequent calls to [XmlEvNext\(\)](#) on page 4-30

**XmlEvDestroyPPCtx()**

Destroys the event context. Terminates parsing. May be called at any time during a parsing operation.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlEvDestroyPPCtx(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**XmlEvDestroySVCtx()**

Terminates an event context created by a streaming validator. Returns XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] on success, or a numeric error code on failure.

Use in conjunction with [XmlEvCreateSVCtx\(\)](#) on page 4-7. This is a transparent method. An alternate approach would be to use the opaque [XmlEvSchemaValidate\(\)](#) on page 4-31.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlEvDestroySVCtx(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlevctx *evCtx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
evCtx	IN	Event context that should be terminated

**Returns**

(xmlerr) the error number

## **XmlEvGetAttrCount()**

Retrieves the number of attributes for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT event.

### **Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlEvGetAttrCount(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

### **Returns**

(ub4) the number of attributes

## **XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody()**

Retrieves the attribute body in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

### **Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute
len	OUT	the length

### **Returns**

(oratext\*) the declaration body

## **XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute body in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION.

### **Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the declaration body

## **XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount()**

Retrieves the number of attributes in attribute declaration  
XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount(  
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(ub4) number of attributes

## **XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName()**

Retrieves the element name in attribute declaration  
XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName(  
    xmlevctx *evctx,  
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the element name

## **XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated element name in attribute declaration  
XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName0(  
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the element name

**XmLEvGetAttrDeclLocalName()**

Retrieves the local name of the attribute declaration event, XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmLEvGetAttrDeclLocalName(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the local name

**XmLEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated local name in attribute declaration event, XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmLEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the local name

**XmLEvGetAttrDeclName()**

Retrieves the attribute name in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmLEvGetAttrDeclName(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
```

```
ub4 index  
ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute
len	OUT	the length

### Returns

(oratext\*) the attribute name

## **XmEvGetAttrDeclName0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute name in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmEvGetAttrDeclName0(  
    xmlevctx *evctx,  
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

### Returns

(oratext\*) the attribute name

## **XmEvGetAttrDeclPrefix()**

Retrieves the attribute prefix in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmEvGetAttrDeclPrefix(  
    xmlevctx *evctx,  
    ub4 index  
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute
len	OUT	the length

### Returns

(oratext\*) the attribute prefix

## **XmLEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute prefix in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION.

### **Syntax**

```
oratext *XmLEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

### **Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute prefix

## **XmLEvGetAttrID()**

Retrieves the ID for the attribute's QNAME, for XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events. Invokes the user-supplied ID callback specified in [XmLEvCreatePPCtx\(\)](#); if the callback is not specified, returns 0.

### **Syntax**

```
sb8 XmLEvGetAttrID(
    xmlevctx *evctx
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of attribute

### **Returns**

(sb8) the ID

## **XmLEvGetAttrLocalName()**

Retrieves the attribute local name for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

### **Syntax**

```
oratext *XmLEvGetAttrLocalName(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
index	IN	index of the attribute; ignored for XML_EVENT_START_ATTR
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute name

**XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute local name for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute; ignored for XML_EVENT_START_ATTR

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute name

**XmlEvGetAttrName()**

Retrieves the attribute name for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrName(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute; ignored for XML_EVENT_START_ATTR
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute name

**XmlEvGetAttrName0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute name for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events.

## Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrName0(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute; ignored for XML_EVENT_START_ATTR

## Returns

(oratext\*) the attribute name

## XmlEvGetAttrPrefix()

Retrieves the prefix tag for XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.

## Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrPrefix(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute
len	OUT	length of the event name

## Returns

(oratext\*) the attribute prefix

## XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute prefix for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events.

## Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

## Returns

(oratext\*) the attribute prefix

## XmlEvGetAttrURI()

Retrieves the attribute URI for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrURI(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute
len	OUT	the length

### Returns

(oratext\*) the attribute URI

## XmlEvGetAttrURI0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute URI for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrURI0 (
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

### Returns

(oratext\*) the attribute URI

## XmlEvGetAttrUriID()

Retrieves the ID for the attribute's URI, for XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events. Invokes the user-supplied ID callback specified in [XmlEvCreatePPCtx\(\)](#); if the callback is not specified, returns 0.

### Syntax

```
sb8 XmlEvGetAttrUriID(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of attribute

**Returns**

(sb8) the ID

**XmlEvGetAttrValue()**

Retrieves the attribute value for one of the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrValue(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute
len	OUT	length of the event name

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute value

**XmlEvGetAttrValue0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute value for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrValue0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute value

**XmlEvGetElDeclContent()**

Retrieves the element declaration content for XML\_EVENT\_ELEMENT\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmEvGetElDeclContent(  
    xmlevctx *evctx,  
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	the length

### Returns

(oratext\*) the declaration content

## **XmEvGetElDeclContent0()**

Retrieves the element declaration content for XML\_EVENT\_ELEMENT\_DECLARATION.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmEvGetElDeclContent0(  
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

### Returns

(oratext\*) the declaration content

## **XmEvGetEncoding()**

Returns the value of the encoding specified in either [XmEvCreatePPCtx\(\)](#) call or [XmEvCreateSVCtx\(\)](#) call.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmEvGetEncoding(  
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

### Returns

(oratext\*) the encoding value in out-encoding; NULL if no encoding is specified

## **XmEvGetError()**

Retrieves the error number when the XML\_EVENT\_FATAL\_ERROR or XML\_EVENT\_ERROR event is returned by a [XmEvNext\(\)](#) call.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmEvGetError(
```

---

```
xmlevctx *evctx
oratext **message);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
message	IN	the error message

**Returns**

(xmlerr) the error number

**XmlEvGetName()**

Retruns the name of the events, and the length of the event in the OUT len parameter. The event name could be one of the following:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ENTITY
- XML\_EVENT\_ENTITY\_REFERENCE
- XML\_EVENT\_ELEMENT\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_NOTATTION\_DECLARATION

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetName(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the name

**Returns**

(oratext\*) The name

**XmlEvGetName0()**

Retrieves a NULL-terminated name for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ENTITY
- XML\_EVENT\_ENTITY\_REFERENCE
- XML\_EVENT\_ELEMENT\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION

- XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_NOTATTION\_DECLARATION

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEventGetName0(
    xmleventctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) The name

**XmIEvGetLocalName()**

Retrieves the local name tag for one of the following events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetLocalName(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the event name

**Returns**

(oratext\*) local name tag

**XmIEvGetLocalName0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated local name tag for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetLocalName0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) local name tag

**XmlEvGetLocation()**

Retrieves the location during parsing, as OUT parameters for the line number of the input stream and its path. Can be used at any time during the parsing processes.

**Syntax**

```
void *XmlEvGetLocation(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *line,
    oratext **path);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
line	OUT	line number
path	OUT	URL or file name

**XmlEvGetPIData()**

Retrieves the text for one of the following events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_PI
- XML\_EVENT\_PI\_CONT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPIData(
    xmlevctx *evctx
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the event name

**Returns**

(oratext\*) data

**XmlEvGetPIData0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated data for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_PI
- XML\_EVENT\_PI\_CONT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPIData0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) data

**XmlEvGetPITarget()**

Retrieves the target for one of the following events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_PI
- XML\_EVENT\_PI\_CONT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPITarget(
    xmlevctx *evctx
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the event name

**Returns**

(oratext\*) target

**XmlEvGetPITarget0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated target for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_PI
- XML\_EVENT\_PI\_CONT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPITarget0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) target

**XmlEvGetPEIsGen()**

Determines if the general entity was declared, XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION.

## Syntax

```
boolean XmlEvGetPEIsGen(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

## Returns

TRUE for a general entity, FALSE if a parameter

## XmlEvGetPERepl()

Retrieves the replacement text of PE declaration, XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

## Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPERepl(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	the length

## Returns

(oratext\*) PE replacement text

## XmlEvGetPERepl0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated replacement text of PE declaration, XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION.

## Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPERepl0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

## Returns

(oratext\*) PE replacement text

## XmlEvGetPrefix()

Retrieves the prefix tag for one of the following events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPrefix(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the prefix

### Returns

(oratext\*) the prefix tag

## XmlEvGetPrefix0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated prefix tag for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPrefix0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

### Returns

(oratext\*) the prefix tag

## XmlEvGetPubId()

Retrieves the public id for one of the following events; also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_NOTATION\_DECLARATION

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPubId(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratext\*) public id

**XmlEvGetPubId()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated public id for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_NOTATION\_DECLARATION

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPubId(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returnsb**

(oratext\*) public id

**XmlEvGetSysId()**

Retrieves the system id for one of the following events; also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_NOTATION\_DECLARATION

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetSysId(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratext\*) system id

**XmlEvGetSysId0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated system id for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION

- XML\_EVENT\_NOTATION\_DECLARATION

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmleGetSysId0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) system id

**XmleGetTagID()**

Retrieves the ID for the tag's QNAME, for XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events. Invokes the user-supplied ID callback specified in [XmleCreatePPCtx\(\)](#); if the callback is not specified, returns 0.

**Syntax**

```
sb8 XmleGetTagID(
    xmlevctx *evctx)
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(sb8) the ID

**XmleGetTagUriID()**

Retrieves the ID for the tag's URI, for XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT and XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT events. Invokes the user-supplied ID callback specified in [XmleCreatePPCtx\(\)](#); if the callback is not specified, returns 0.

**Syntax**

```
sb8 XmleGetTagUriID(
    xmlevctx *evctx)
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(sb8) the ID

**XmleGetText()**

Retrieves the text for one of the following events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_CHARACTERS
- XML\_EVENT\_CHARACTERS\_CONT
- XML\_EVENT\_SPACE
- XML\_EVENT\_SPACE\_CONT
- XML\_EVENT\_COMMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_COMMENT\_CONT
- XML\_EVENT\_CDATA
- XML\_EVENT\_CDATA\_CONT

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetText(
    xmlevctx *evctx
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the event name

### Returns

(oratext\*) event text

## XmlEvGetText0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated text for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_CHARACTERS
- XML\_EVENT\_CHARACTERS\_CONT
- XML\_EVENT\_SPACE
- XML\_EVENT\_SPACE\_CONT
- XML\_EVENT\_COMMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_COMMENT\_CONT
- XML\_EVENT\_CDATA
- XML\_EVENT\_CDATA\_CONT

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetText0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

### Returns

(oratext\*) event text

## XmlEvGetUENdata()

Retrieves the ndata for XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION event, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetUENdata(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the event name

### Returns

(oratext\*) ndata

## XmlEvGetUENdata0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated ndata for XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION event.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetUENdata0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

### Returns

(oratext\*) ndata

## XmlEvGetURI()

Retrieves the URI tag for one of the following events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetURI(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the event name

**Returns**

(oratext\*) URI tag

**XmlEvGetURI0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated URI tag for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetURI0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) URI tag

**XmlEvGetVersion()**

Provides information about version specification in XML declaration for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_DOCUMENT event.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetVersion(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) version string from the XML declaration.

**XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified()**

Provides information about encoding specification in XML declaration for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_DOCUMENT event.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

TRUE if encoding was specified in XML declaration, FALSE otherwise

## XmlEvIsNamespaceAttr()

Determines if an attribute is a namespace attribute for XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT event.

### Syntax

```
boolean XmlEvIsNamespaceAttr(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

### Returns

TRUE if an attribute is a namespace attribute, FALSE otherwise

## XmlEvIsStandalone()

Provides information about standalone specification in XML declaration for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_DOCUMENT event.

### Syntax

```
sword XmlEvIsStandalone(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Events contextt

### Returns

(sword) -1 if standalone was not specified in the XML declaration, 0 if FALSE was specified for standalone, and 1 if TRUE was specified for standalone

## XmlEvNext()

Gets the next event; advances the parser.

### Syntax

```
xmlevtype XmlEvNext(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

### Returns

(xmlevtype) the event

## **XmlEvNextTag()**

Advances the parser to the next tag event, such as XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT, XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT, and XML\_EVENT\_END\_DOCUMENT.

### **Syntax**

```
xmlevtype XmlEvNextTag(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

### **Returns**

(xmlevtype) the event

## **XmlEvLoadPPDoc()**

Loads a new document and sets it up for pull parsing. Prepares to start parsing the XML document from an input source in pull-parse mode. Input sources are the same as for [XmlLoadDom\(\)](#) on page 11-9 and [XmlLoadSax\(\)](#) on page 11-11 of [Chapter 11, "Package XML APIs for C"](#). The actual parsing is driven by multiple calls to [XmlEvNext\(\)](#).

### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlEvLoadPPDoc(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    oratext *inputType,
    void *input,
    ub4 inputLen,
    oratext *inputEncoding);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
evctx	IN	XML Events contextt
inputType	IN	type of input, such as file, buffer, uri, stream, or stdio
input	IN	the input
inputLen	IN	input length for buffer input type
inputEncoding	IN	input encoding

### **Returns**

(xmlerr) the error code

## **XmlEvSchemaValidate()**

Validates XML documents represented by events. Initializes the stream validator.

This is an opaque method. An alternate approach would be to use the transparent [XmlEvCreateSVCtx\(\)](#) on page 4-7 and [XmlEvDestroySVCtx\(\)](#) on page 4-8.

## Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlEvSchemaValidate(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xsdctx *sctx,
    xmlevctx *docEvCtx,
    oratext **errmsg);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
sctx	IN	Schema context
docEvCtx	IN	Event context for the document that is validated
errmsg	OUT	The error message that corresponds to the error code

## Returns

(xmlerr) the error code

# 5

---

## Package Orastream APIs for C

Orastream APIs support handling of of text and binary nodes that exceed 64K in an XML document.

Orastream contains the following group of interfaces:

- "OraStream Interfaces" on page 5-2

The datatypes used by Orastream are found in [Chapter 1, "Datatypes for C"](#); they include `oracheck`, `oraerr`, `oraprop_id`, `oramemctx`, `oraprop`, `oraprop_t`, `oraprop_v`, `orastream`, and `orastreamhdl`.

The error codes for the Orastream interfaces are described in [Table 5-1](#).

**Table 5-1 Orastream Error Codes**

Error Code	Description
<code>ORASTREAM_ERR_NULL_POINTER</code>	Null pointer encountered.
<code>ORASTREAM_ERR_BAD_STREAM</code>	Invalid stream object.
<code>ORASTREAM_ERR_WRONG_DIRECTION</code>	Stream object is defined for the opposite I/O direction.
<code>ORASTREAM_ERR_UNKNOWN_PROPERTY</code>	Unknown creation property.
<code>ORASTREAM_ERR_NO_DIRECTION</code>	The I/O direction of the stream is undefined.
<code>ORASTREAM_ERR_BI_DIRECTION</code>	The stream direction is incorrectly defined as using both I/O directions.
<code>ORASTREAM_ERR_NOT_OPEN</code>	The stream is not open.
<code>ORASTREAM_ERR_WRONG_MODE</code>	The stream is defined for the opposite char/byte mode.
<code>ORASTREAM_ERR_CANT_OPEN</code>	The stream cannot be opened.
<code>ORASTREAM_ERR_CANT_CLOSE</code>	The stream cannot be closed.

For more information on Orastream interfaces, see *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*.

## OraStream Interfaces

These methods support unidirectional streams used to move data piecewise. The direction and mode of the stream is determined by the parameters that initialize the stream in the [OraStreamInit\(\)](#) method.

**Table 5–2 Summary of OraStream Methods; Package Orastream**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">OraStreamClose()</a> on page 5-2	Closes the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamHandle()</a> on page 5-2	Returns the handle to the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamInit()</a> on page 5-3	Initializes the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamIsOpen()</a> on page 5-4	Determines if the stream is open.
<a href="#">OraStreamOpen()</a> on page 5-4	Opens the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamRead()</a> on page 5-5	Reads bytes from the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamReadable()</a> on page 5-5	Determines if the stream is readable.
<a href="#">OraStreamReadChar()</a> on page 5-6	Reads characters from the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamSid()</a> on page 5-6	Sets the SID of a stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamTerm()</a> on page 5-7	Destroys the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamWrite()</a> on page 5-7	Writes bytes to the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamWritable()</a> on page 5-7	Determines if the stream is writable.
<a href="#">OraStreamWriteChar()</a> on page 5-8	Writes characters to the stream.

### OraStreamClose()

Closes the `orastream` object.

The function is used to close the given stream by calling the 'close' callback function of the stream.

Returns `ORAERR_OK` for success, or the error code for failure. See [Table 5–1](#) on page 5-1.

#### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamClose(  
    orastream *stream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>stream</code>	IN	Stream that is closed

### OraStreamHandle()

Returns the handle of the `orastream` object.

The handle contains the generic pointers and file descriptors.

**Syntax**

```
orastreamhdl *OraStreamHandle(
    orastream *stream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream whose handle is returned

**OraStreamInit()**

Creates and initializes a `orastream` object.

**Syntax**

```
orastream *OraStreamInit(
    void *sctx,
    void *sid,
    oraerr *err,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	The input context; may be NULL
sid	IN	The user-defined stream context identifier
err	OUT	The error, if any. ORAERR_OK for success, or the error code for failure. See <a href="#">Table 5-1</a> on page 5-1

## OraStreamIsOpen()

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
list	IN	<p>NULL-terminated list of name-value pairs of arguments that specify the properties of the new <code>orastream</code> object. These are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ The <code>open</code> property name is for the <code>open</code> function, and its value follows. <code>ORASTREAM_OPEN_F((*), sctx, sid, hdl, length)</code></li><li>■ The <code>close</code> property name is for the <code>close</code> function, and its value follows. <code>ORASTREAM_CLOSE_F((*), sctx, sid, hdl)</code></li><li>■ The <code>read</code> property name is for reading byte data from the stream to the buffer. Note that <code>nread</code> returns the number of bytes actually read. <code>ORASTREAM_READ_F((*), sctx, sid, hdl, dest, size, start, nread, eoi)</code></li><li>■ The <code>write</code> property name is for writing byte data from the buffer to the stream. Note that <code>written</code> returns the number of bytes actually written. <code>ORASTREAM_WRITE_F((*), sctx, sid, hdl, src, size, written)</code></li><li>■ The <code>read_char</code> property name is for reading character data from the stream to the buffer. Note that <code>nread</code> returns the number of characters actually read. <code>ORASTREAM_READ_F((*), sctx, sid, hdl, dest, size, start, nread, eoi)</code></li><li>■ The <code>write_char</code> property name is for writing character data from the buffer to the stream. Note that <code>written</code> returns the number of characters actually written. <code>ORASTREAM_WRITE_F((*), sctx, sid, hdl, src, size, written)</code></li></ul>

## OraStreamIsOpen()

Determines if the `orastream` is open. Returns TRUE or FALSE.

Note that the stream must be open to perform read and write operations.

### Syntax

```
boolean OraStreamIsOpen(  
    orastream *stream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	The stream that should be open for reads or writes.

## OraStreamOpen()

Opens the `orastream` object.

The function opens the stream by calling the 'open' callback function of the stream.

---

Returns ORAERR\_OK for success, or the error code for failure. See [Table 5–1](#) on page 5-1.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamOpen(
    orastream *stream,
    ubig_ora *length)
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	The stream that is open
length	OUT	Optional parameter; not used

## OraStreamRead()

Reads bytes from the `orastream` object.

The function is used to read the data from the stream into the specified buffer. It also returns TRUE for the `eoi` parameter if the end of stream is reached.

Returns ORAERR\_OK for success, or the error code for failure. See [Table 5–1](#) on page 5-1.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamRead(
    orastream *stream,
    oratext *dest,
    ubig_ora size,
    oratext **start,
    ubig_ora *nread,
    ub1 *eoi);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream that is being read
dest	IN	The destination buffer
size	IN	The size of the data to be read
start	OUT	Pointer to the start of data being read
nread	OUT	Number of bytes actually read from the stream
eoi	OUT	Returns TRUE if end of the stream is reached; FALSE otherwise

## OraStreamReadable()

Determines if an existing `orastream` object is readable.

Returns TRUE or FALSE.

### Syntax

```
boolean OraStreamReadable(
    orastream *stream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream that is checked for readability

## OraStreamReadChar()

Reads chars from the `orastream` object.

The function is used to read the data from the stream into the specified buffer. It also returns TRUE for the `eoi` parameter if the end of stream is reached.

Returns ORAERR\_OK for success, or the error code for failure. See [Table 5-1](#) on page 5-1.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamReadChar(
    orastream *stream,
    oratext *dest,
    ubig_ora size,
    oratext **start,
    ubig_ora *nread,
    ubl *eoi);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream that is being read
dest	IN	The destination buffer
size	IN	The size of the data to be read
start	OUT	Pointer to the start of data being read
nread	OUT	Number of characters actually read from the stream
eoi	OUT	Returns TRUE if end of the stream is reached; FALSE otherwise

## OraStreamSid()

Assigns an SID to an existing `orastream` object. Returns the old SID through the OUT parameter `osid`.

Returns ORAERR\_OK for success, or the error code for failure. See [Table 5-1](#) on page 5-1.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamSid(
    orastream *stream,
    void *sid,
    void **osid);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	The stream whose SID is changed

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sid	IN	The new SID
osid	OUT	The previous SID of the stream

## OraStreamTerm()

Destroys a `orastream` object and frees its associated memory.

Returns `ORAERR_OK` for success, or the error code for failure. See [Table 5–1](#) on page 5-1.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamTerm(
    orastream *stream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream that is destroyed

## OraStreamWriter()

Writes bytes to the `orastream` object.

The number of bytes actually read are stored by the OUT parameter `nwrote`.

Returns `ORAERR_OK` for success, or the error code for failure. See [Table 5–1](#) on page 5-1.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamWriter(
    orastream *stream,
    oratext *src,
    ubig_ora size,
    ubig_ora *nwrote);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream where the data is written
src	IN	Buffer from which the data is written
size	IN	Size of data to be written
nwrote	OUT	Number of bytes written to the stream

## OraStreamWritable()

Determines if an existing `orastream` object is writable.

Returns TRUE or FALSE.

### Syntax

```
boolean OraStreamWritable(
```

---

```
orastream *stream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream that is checked for writability.

## OraStreamWriteChar()

Writes chars to the `orastream` object.

The number of characters actually written are stored by the OUT parameter `nwrote`.

Returns `ORAERR_OK` for success, or the error code for failure. See [Table 5-1](#) on page 5-1.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamWriteChar(
    orastream *stream,
    oratext *src,
    ubig_ora size,
    ubig_ora *nwrote);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream where the data is written
src	IN	Buffer from which the data is written
size	IN	Size of data to be written
nwrote	OUT	Number of characters written to the stream

# 6

---

## Package Range APIs for C

Package Range contains APIs for two interfaces.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [DocumentRange Interface](#)
- [Range Interface](#)

**See Also:**

- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

## DocumentRange Interface

[Table 6–1](#) summarizes the methods available through the DocumentRange interface.

**Table 6–1 Summary of DocumentRange Methods; Package Range**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateRange()</a> on page 6-2	Create Range object.

### XmlDomCreateRange()

The only one method of DocumentRange interface, used to create a Range object.

#### Syntax

```
xmlrange* XmlDomCreateRange(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	existing NodeIterator, or NULL to allocate new
doc	IN	document to which the new Range is attached

#### Returns

(xmlrange \*) original or new Range object.

## Range Interface

Table 6–2 summarizes the methods available through the Range interface.

**Table 6–2 Summary of Range Methods; Package Range**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeClone()</a> on page 6-3	Clone a range.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeCloneContents()</a> on page 6-4	Clone contents selected by a range.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeCollapse()</a> on page 6-4	Collapse range to either start point or end point.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints()</a> on page 6-5	Compare boundary points of two ranges.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeDeleteContents()</a> on page 6-5	Delete content selected by a range.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeDetach()</a> on page 6-5	Detach a range.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeExtractContents()</a> on page 6-6	Extract contents selected by a range.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeGetCollapsed()</a> on page 6-6	Return whether the range is collapsed.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeGetCommonAncestor()</a> on page 6-7	Return deepest common ancestor node of two boundary points.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeGetDetached()</a> on page 6-7	Return whether the range is detached.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeGetEndContainer()</a> on page 6-7	Return range end container node.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeGetEndOffset()</a> on page 6-8	Return range end offset.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeGetStartContainer()</a> on page 6-8	Return range start container node.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeGetStartOffset()</a> on page 6-9	Return range start offset.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeIsConsistent()</a> on page 6-9	Return whether the range is consistent.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeSelectNode()</a> on page 6-9	Select a node as a range.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeSelectNodeContents()</a> on page 6-10	Define range to select node contents.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeSetEnd()</a> on page 6-10	Set the end point.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeSetEndBefore()</a> on page 6-11	Set the end point before a node.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeSetStart()</a> on page 6-11	Set the start point.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeSetStartAfter()</a> on page 6-12	Set the start point after a node.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeSetStartBefore()</a> on page 6-12	Set the start point before a node.

### **XmlDomRangeClone()**

Clone a Range. Clones the range without affecting the content selected by the original range. Returns NULL if an error.

#### **Syntax**

```
xmlrange* XmlDomRangeClone(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
```

```
xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(xmlrange \*) new range that clones the old one

**XmIDomRangeCloneContents()**

Clone contents selected by a range. Clones but does not delete contents selected by a range. Performs the range consistency check and sets `retval` to an error code if an error.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmIDomRangeCloneContents(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) cloned contents

**XmIDomRangeCollapse()**

Collapses the range to either start point or end point. The point where it is collapsed to is assumed to be a valid point in the document which this range is attached to.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmIDomRangeCollapse(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    boolean tostart);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
tostart	IN	indicates whether to collapse to start (TRUE) or to end (FALSE)

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

**XmIDomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints()**

Compares two boundary points of two different ranges. Returns -1, 0, 1 depending on whether the corresponding boundary point of the range (range) is before, equal, or after the corresponding boundary point of the second range (srange). It returns ~ (int) 0 if two ranges are attached to two different documents or if one of them is detached.

**Syntax**

```
sb4 XmIDomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlcmphow how,
    xmlrange *srange,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
how	IN	xmlcmphow value; how to compare
srange	IN	range object with which to compare
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(sb4) strcmp-like comparison result

**XmIDomRangeDeleteContents()**

Deletes content selected by a range. Performs the range consistency check and sets retval to an error code if an error.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmIDomRangeDeleteContents(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

**XmIDomRangeDetach()**

Detaches the range from the document and places it (range) in invalid state.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomRangeDetach(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

**XmlDomRangeExtractContents()**

Extract contents selected by a range. Clones and deletes contents selected by a range. Performs the range consistency check and sets `retval` to an error code if an error.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRangeExtractContents(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) extracted

**XmlDomRangeGetCollapsed()**

Returns TRUE if the range is collapsed and is not detached, otherwise returns FALSE.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlDomRangeGetCollapsed(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE if the range is collapsed, FALSE otherwise

## XmldomRangeGetCommonAncestor()

Returns deepest common ancestor node of two boundary points of the range if the range is not detached, otherwise returns NULL. It is assumed that the range is in a consistent state.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmldomRangeGetCommonAncestor(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) deepest common ancestor node [or NULL]

## XmldomRangeGetDetached()

Return whether the range is detached. Returns TRUE if the range is detached and is not NULL. Otherwise returns FALSE.

### Syntax

```
ub1 XmldomRangeGetDetached(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object

### Returns

(ub1) TRUE if the range is detached, FALSE otherwise

## XmldomRangeGetEndContainer()

Returns range end container node if the range is not detached, otherwise returns NULL.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmldomRangeGetEndContainer(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) range end container node [or NULL]

**XmlDomRangeGetEndOffset()**

Returns range end offset if the range is not detached, otherwise returns ~ (ub4) 0 [the maximum ub4 value].

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlDomRangeGetEndOffset(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(ub4) range end offset [or ub4 maximum]

**XmlDomRangeGetStartContainer()**

Returns range start container node if the range is valid and is not detached, otherwise returns NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRangeGetStartContainer(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) range start container node

## XmIDomRangeGetStartOffset()

Returns range start offset if the range is not detached, otherwise returns ~ (ub4) 0 [the maximum ub4 value].

### Syntax

```
ub4 XmIDomRangeGetStartOffset(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

### Returns

(ub4) range start offset [or ub4 maximum]

## XmIDomRangesConsistent()

Return whether the range is consistent. Returns TRUE if the range is consistent: both points are under the same root and the start point is before or equal to the end point. Otherwise returns FALSE.

### Syntax

```
boolean XmIDomRangeIsConsistent(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

### Returns

(ub1) TRUE if the range is consistent, FALSE otherwise

## XmIDomRangeSelectNode()

Sets the range end point and start point so that the parent node of this node becomes the container node, and the offset is the offset of this node among the children of its parent. The range becomes collapsed. It is assumed that the node is a valid node of its document. If the range is detached, it is ignored, and the range becomes attached.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmIDomRangeSelectNode(
```

```
xmlctx *xctx,
xmlrange *range,
xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

**XmIDomRangeSelectNodeContents()**

Sets the range start point to the start of the node contents and the end point to the end of the node contents. It is assumed that the node is a valid document node. If the range is detached, it is ignored, and the range becomes attached.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmIDomRangeSelectNodeContents(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

**XmIDomRangeSetEnd()**

Sets the range end point. If it has a root container other than the current one for the range, the range is collapsed to the new position. If the end is set to be at a position before the start, the range is collapsed to that position. Returns xmlerr value according to the description where this type is defined. It is assumed that the start point of the range is a valid start point.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmIDomRangeSetEnd(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlnode *node,
    ub4 offset);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
range	IN	range object
node	IN	XML node
offset	IN	ending offset

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

**XmIDomRangeSetEndBefore()**

Sets the range end point before a node. If it has a root container other than the current one for the range, the range is collapsed to the new position. If the before node sets the end to be at a position before the start, the range is collapsed to new position. Returns xmlerr value according to the description where this type is defined. It is assumed that the start point of the range is a valid start point.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmIDomRangeSetEndBefore(
    xm xmlDocx *xctx,
    xm xrange *range,
    xm xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

**XmIDomRangeSetStart()**

Sets the range start point. If it has a root container other than the current one for the range, the range is collapsed to the new position. If the start is set to be at a position after the end, the range is collapsed to that position. Returns xmlerr value according to the description where this type is defined. It is assumed that the end point of the range is a valid end point.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmIDomRangeSetStart(
    xm xmlDocx *xctx,
    xm xrange *range,
    xm xmlnode *node,
    ub4 offset);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object

Parameter	In/Out	Description
node	IN	XML node
offset	IN	starting offset

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

**XmlDomRangeSetStartAfter()**

Sets the range start point after a node. If it has a root container other than the current one, the range is collapsed to the new position. If the previous node sets the start after the end, the range is collapsed to a new position. It is assumed that the end point of the range is a valid end point.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomRangeSetStartAfter(
    xmldctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

**XmlDomRangeSetStartBefore()**

Sets the range start point before a node. If it has a root container other than the current one, the range is collapsed to the new position with offset 0. If the previous node sets the start after the end, the range is collapsed to a new position. It is assumed that the end point of the range is a valid end point.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomRangeSetStartBefore(
    xmldctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

---

## Package SAX APIs for C

SAX is a standard interface for event-based XML parsing, developed collaboratively by the members of the XML-DEV mailing list. To use SAX, an `xmlsaxcb` structure is initialized with function pointers and passed to one of the `XmlLoadSax` calls. A pointer to a user-defined context structure is also provided, and will be passed to each SAX function.

For event-based schemava validation APIs, refer to [Chapter 4, "Package Event APIs for C"](#).

This chapter contains the following section:

- [SAX Interface](#)

**See Also:**

- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

## SAX Interface

Table 7–1 summarizes the methods available through the SAX interface.

**Table 7–1 Summary of SAX Methods**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlSaxAttributeDecl()</a> on page 7-2	Receives SAX notification of an attribute's declaration.
<a href="#">XmlSaxCDATA()</a> on page 7-3	Receives SAX notification of CDATA. Oracle extension.
<a href="#">XmlSaxCharacters()</a> on page 7-3	Receives SAX notification of character data
<a href="#">XmlSaxComment()</a> on page 7-4	Receives SAX notification of a comment.
<a href="#">XmlSaxElementDecl()</a> on page 7-4	Receives SAX notification of an element's declaration. Oracle extension.
<a href="#">XmlSaxEndDocument()</a> on page 7-5	Receives SAX end-of-document notification.
<a href="#">XmlSaxEndElement()</a> on page 7-5	Receives SAX end-of-element notification.
<a href="#">XmlSaxNotationDecl()</a> on page 7-5	Receives SAX notification of a notation declaration.
<a href="#">XmlSaxPI()</a> on page 7-6	Receives SAX notification of a processing instruction.
<a href="#">XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl()</a> on page 7-6	Receives SAX notification of a parsed entity declaration. Oracle extension.
<a href="#">XmlSaxStartDocument()</a> on page 7-7	Receives SAX start-of-document notification.
<a href="#">XmlSaxStartElement()</a> on page 7-7	Receives SAX start-of-element notification.
<a href="#">XmlSaxStartElementNS()</a> on page 7-8	Receives SAX namespace-aware start-of-element notification.
<a href="#">XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl()</a> on page 7-8	Receives SAX notification of an unparsed entity declaration.
<a href="#">XmlSaxWhitespace()</a> on page 7-9	Receives SAX notification of ignorable (whitespace) data.
<a href="#">XmlSaxXmlDecl()</a> on page 7-9	Receives SAX notification of an XML declaration. Oracle extension.

### **XmlSaxAttributeDecl()**

This event marks an element declaration in the DTD. The element's name and content will be in the data encoding. Note that an attribute may be declared before the element it belongs to!

#### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxAttributeDecl(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *elem,
    oratext *attr,
    oratext *body);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
elem	IN	element for which the attribute is declared; data encoding
attr	IN	attribute's name; data encoding
body	IN	body of an attribute declaration

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:** [XmlSaxAttributeDecl\(\)](#)

## XmlSaxCDATA()

This event handles CDATA, as distinct from Text. If no XmlSaxCDATA callback is provided, the Text callback will be invoked. The data will be in the data encoding, and the returned length is in characters, not bytes. See also [XmlSaxWhitespace](#), which receiving notification about ignorable (whitespace formatting) character data.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxCDATA(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *ch,
    size_t len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
ch	IN	pointer to CDATA; data encoding
len	IN	length of CDATA, in characters

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:** [XmlSaxWhitespace\(\)](#)

## XmlSaxCharacters()

This event marks character data, either Text or CDATA. If an XmlSaxCDATA callback is provided, then CDATA will be send to that instead; with no XmlSaxCDATA callback, both Text and CDATA go to the XmlSaxCharacters callback. The data will be in the data encoding, and the returned length is in characters, not bytes. See also [XmlSaxWhitespace](#), which receiving notification about ignorable (whitespace formatting) character data.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxCharacters(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *ch,
    size_t len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
ch	IN	pointer to data; data encoding
len	IN	length of data, in characters

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:** [XmlSaxWhitespace\(\)](#)

## XmlSaxComment()

This event marks a comment in the XML document. The comment's data will be in the data encoding. Oracle extension, not in SAX standard.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxComment(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *data);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
data	IN	comment's data; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

## XmlSaxElementDecl()

This event marks an element declaration in the DTD. The element's name and content will be in the data encoding.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxElementDecl(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *name,
    oratext *content);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
name	IN	element's name
content	IN	element's context model

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:** [XmlSaxAttributeDecl\(\)](#)

## **XmlSaxEndDocument()**

The last SAX event, called once for each document, indicating the end of the document. Matching event is `XmlSaxStartDocument`.

### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxEndDocument(
    void *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context

### **Returns**

(`xmlerr`) error code, `XMLERR_OK` [0] for success

**See Also:** [XmlSaxStartDocument\(\)](#)

## **XmlSaxEndElement()**

This event marks the close of an element; it matches the `XmlSaxStartElement` or `XmlSaxStartElementNS` events. The name is the `tagName` of the element (which may be a qualified name for namespace-aware elements) and is in the data encoding.

### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxEndElement(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
name	IN	name of ending element; data encoding

### **Returns**

(`xmlerr`) error code, `XMLERR_OK` [0] for success

**See Also:** [XmlSaxEndElement\(\)](#)

## **XmlSaxNotationDecl()**

The even marks the declaration of a notation in the DTD. The notation's name, public ID, and system ID will all be in the data encoding. Both IDs are optional and may be NULL.

### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxNotationDecl(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *name,
    oratext *pubId,
    oratext *sysId);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
name	IN	notation's name; data encoding
pubId	IN	notation's public ID as data encoding, or NULL
sysId	IN	notation's system ID as data encoding, or NULL

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**XmlSaxPI()**

This event marks a ProcessingInstruction. The ProcessingInstructions target and data will be in the data encoding. There is always a target, but the data may be NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxPI(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *target,
    oratext *data);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
target	IN	PI's target; data encoding
data	IN	PI's data as data encoding, or NULL

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl()**

Marks an parsed entity declaration in the DTD. The parsed entity's name, public ID, system ID, and notation name will all be in the data encoding.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *name,
    oratext *value,
    oratext *pubId,
    oratext *sysId,
    boolean general);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
name	IN	entity's name; data encoding
value	IN	entity's value; data encoding

Parameter	In/Out	Description
pubId	IN	entity's public ID as data encoding, or NULL
sysId	IN	entity's system ID; data encoding
general	IN	TRUE if general entity, FALSE if parameter entity

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:** [XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl\(\)](#)

## XmlSaxStartDocument()

The first SAX event, called once for each document, indicating the start of the document. Matching event is XmlSaxEndDocument.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxStartDocument(
    void *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:** [XmlSaxEndDocument\(\)](#)

## XmlSaxStartElement()

This event marks the start of an element. Note this is the original SAX 1 non-namespace-aware version; XmlSaxStartElementNS is the SAX 2 namespace-aware version. If both are registered, only the NS version will be called. The element's name will be in the data encoding, as are all the attribute parts. See the functions in the NamedNodeMap interface for operating on the attributes map. The matching function is XmlSaxEndElement (there is no namespace aware version of this function).

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxStartElement(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *name,
    xmlnodeList *attrs);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
name	IN	element's name; data encoding
attrs	IN	NamedNodeMap of element's attributes

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:** [XmlSaxEndElement\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#) and [XmlDomRemoveNamedItem\(\)](#) in Chapter 3, "Package DOM APIs for C"

**XmISaxStartElementNS()**

This event marks the start of an element. Note this is the new SAX 2 namespace-aware version; XmlSaxStartElement is the SAX 1 non-namespace-aware version. If both are registered, only the NS version will be called. The element's qualified name, local name, and namespace URI will be in the data encoding, as are all the attribute parts. See the functions in the NamedNodeMap interface for operating on the attributes map. The matching function is XmlSaxEndElement (there is no namespace aware version of this function).

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmISaxStartElementNS(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *qname,
    oratext *local,
    oratext *nsp,
    xmlnodeList *attrs);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
qname	IN	element's qualified name; data encoding
local	IN	element's namespace local name; data encoding
nsp	IN	element's namespace URI; data encoding
attrs	IN	NodeList of element's attributes, or NULL

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:** [XmlSaxStartElement\(\)](#), [XmlSaxEndElement\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#) and [XmlDomRemoveNamedItem\(\)](#) in [Package DOM APIs for C](#)

**XmISaxUnparsedEntityDecl()**

Marks an unparsed entity declaration in the DTD, see [XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl](#) for the parsed entity version. The unparsed entity's name, public ID, system ID, and notation name will all be in the data encoding.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmISaxUnparsedEntityDecl(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *name,
    oratext *publId,
```

---

```
    oratext *sysId,
    oratext *note);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
name	IN	entity's name; data encoding
pubId	IN	entity's public ID as data encoding, or NULL
sysId	IN	entity's system ID; data encoding
note	IN	entity's notation name; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:** [XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl\(\)](#)

## XmlSaxWhitespace()

This event marks ignorable whitespace data such as newlines, and indentation between lines. The matching function is `XmlSaxCharacters`, which receives notification of normal character data. The data is in the data encoding, and the returned length is in characters, not bytes.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxWhitespace(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *ch,
    size_t len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
ch	IN	pointer to data; data encoding
len	IN	length of data, in characters

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:** [XmlSaxCharacters\(\)](#)

## XmlSaxXmlDecl()

This event marks an XML declaration. The `XmlSaxStartDocument` event is always first; if this callback is registered and an `XMLDecl` exists, it will be the second event. The encoding flag says whether an encoding was specified. Since the document's own encoding specification may be overridden (or wrong), and the input will be converted to the data encoding anyway, the actual encoding specified in the document is not provided. For the standalone flag, -1 will be returned if it was not specified, otherwise 0 for FALSE, 1 for TRUE.

## Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSaxXmlDecl(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *version,
    boolean encoding,
    sword standalone);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
version	IN	version string from XMLDecl; data encoding
encoding	IN	whether encoding was specified
standalone	IN	value of the standalone document; < 0 if not specified

## Returns

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

# 8

---

## Package Schema APIs for C

This C implementation of the XML schema validator follows the W3C XML Schema specification, rev REC-xmllschem-1-20010502. It implements the required behavior of a schema validator for multiple schema documents to be assembled into a schema. This resulting schema can be used to validate a specific instance document.

For event-based schema validation, see the methods documented in [Chapter 4, "Package Event APIs for C"](#).

This chapter contains the following section:

- [Schema Interface](#)

**See Also:**

- [\*Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide\*](#)
- [\*Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide\*](#)

## Schema Interface

---

Table 8–1 summarizes the methods available through the Schema interface.

**Table 8–1 Summary of Schema Methods**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlSchemaClean() on page 8-2</a>	Cleans up loaded schemas in a schema context and recycle the schema context.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaCreate() on page 8-2</a>	Creates and returns a schema context.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaDestroy() on page 8-3</a>	Destroys a schema context.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaErrorWhere() on page 8-3</a>	Returns the location where an error occurred.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaLoad() on page 8-4</a>	Loads a schema document.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaLoadedList() on page 8-4</a>	Returns the size and/or list of loaded schema documents.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler() on page 8-5</a>	Sets an error message handler and its associated context in a schema context
<a href="#">XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions() on page 8-5</a>	Sets option(s) to be used in the next validation session.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaTargetNamespace() on page 8-6</a>	Returns target namespace of a given schema document.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaUnload() on page 8-6</a>	Unloads a schema document.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaValidate() on page 8-7</a>	Validates an element node against a schema.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaVersion() on page 8-7</a>	Returns the version of this schema implementation.

### XmISchemaClean()

Clean up loaded schemas in a schema context and recycle the schema context.

#### Syntax

```
void XmlSchemaClean(  
    xsdctx *sctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context to be cleaned

**See Also:** [XmlSchemaCreate\(\)](#), [XmlSchemaDestroy\(\)](#)

### XmISchemaCreate()

Return a schema context to be used in other validator APIs. This needs to be paired with an [XmlSchemaDestroy](#).

#### Syntax

```
xsdctx *XmlSchemaCreate(  
    xmlctx *xctx,
```

---

```
xmlerr *err,
list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
err	OUT	returned error code
list	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable arguments

**Returns**

(xsdctx \*) schema context

**See Also:** [XmlSchemaDestroy\(\)](#), [XmlCreate\(\)](#) in Chapter 11,  
"Package XML APIs for C"

**XmlSchemaDestroy()**

Destroy a schema context and free up all its resources.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlSchemaDestroy(
    xsdctx *sctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context to be freed

**See Also:** [XmlSchemaCreate\(\)](#)

**XmlSchemaErrorWhere()**

Returns the location (line#, path) where an error occurred.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSchemaErrorWhere(
    xsdctx *sctx,
    ub4 *line,
    oratext **path);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context
line	IN/OUT	line number where error occurred
path	IN/OUT	URL or filesystem where error occurred

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code

**See Also:** [XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler\(\)](#)

## XmlSchemaLoad()

Load up a schema document to be used in the next validation session. Schema documents can be incrementally loaded into a schema context as long as every loaded schema document is valid. When the last loaded schema turns out to be invalid, you need to clean up the schema context by calling [XmlSchemaClean\(\)](#) on page 8-2 and reload everything all over again including the last schema with appropriate correction.

Given a schema document, this function converts the DOM representation into an internal schema representation. The schema document can be provided as a URI or directly a DOM representation. In the URI case, this function reads the input stream and builds a DOM representation of the schema before converting it into internal representation. In the DOM case, the application can provide a DOM representation of the schema, which will be used to create the internal schema representation.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSchemaLoad(
    xsdctx *sctx,
    oratext *uri,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context
uri	IN	URL of schema document; compiler encoding
list	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable arguments

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSchemaUnload\(\)](#), [XmlSchemaLoadedList\(\)](#)

## XmlSchemaLoadedList()

Return only the size of loaded schema documents if *list* is NULL. If *list* is not NULL, a list of URL pointers are returned in the user-provided pointer buffer. Note that its user's responsibility to provide a buffer with big enough size.

### Syntax

```
ub4 XmlSchemaLoadedList(
    xsdctx *sctx,
    oratext **list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context
list	IN	address of pointer buffer

### Returns

(ub4) list size

**See Also:** [XmlSchemaLoad\(\)](#), [XmlSchemaUnload\(\)](#)

## XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler()

Sets an error message handler and its associated context in a schema context. To retrieve useful location information on errors, the address of the schema context must be provided in the error handler context.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler(
    xsdctx *sctx,
    XML_ERRMSG_F(
        (*errhdl),
        ectx,
        msg,
        err),
    void *errctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context
errhdl	IN	error message handler
errctx	IN	error handler context

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code

**See Also:** [XmlSchemaCreate\(\)](#), [XmlSchemaErrorWhere\(\)](#), and [XML\\_ERRMSG\\_F\(\)](#) in Chapter 2, "Package Callback APIs for C"

## XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions()

Set options to be used in the next validation session. Previously set options will remain effective until they are overwritten or reset.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions(
    xsdctx *sctx,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context
list	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable argument

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSchemaValidate\(\)](#)

## XmlSchemaTargetNamespace()

Return target namespace of a given schema document identified by its URI. All currently loaded schema documents can be queried. Currently loaded schema documents include the ones loaded through `XmlSchemaLoad`s and the ones loaded through `schemaLocation` or `noNamespaceSchemaLocation` hints.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlSchemaTargetNamespace(
    xsdctx *sctx,
    oratext *uri);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	XML context
uri	IN	URL of the schema document to be queried

### Returns

(`oratext *`) target namespace string; `NULL` if given document not

**See Also:** [XmlSchemaLoadedList\(\)](#)

## XmlSchemaUnload()

Unload a schema document from the validator. All previously loaded schema documents will remain loaded until they are unloaded. To unload all loaded schema documents, set URI to be `NULL` (this is equivalent to `XmlSchemaClean`). Note that all children schemas associated with the given schema are also unloaded. In this implementation, it only support the following scenarios:

- load, load, ...
- load, load, load, unload, unload, unload, clean, and then repeat.

It doesn't not support: load, load, unload, load, ....

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSchemaUnload(
    xsdctx *sctx,
    oratext *uri,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context
uri	IN	URL of the schema document; compiler encoding
list	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable argument

### Returns

(`xmlerr`) numeric error code, `XMLERR_OK` [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSchemaLoad\(\)](#), [XmlSchemaLoadedList\(\)](#)

## **XmlSchemaValidate()**

Validates an element node against a schema. Schemas used in current session consists of all schema documents specified through `XmlSchemaLoad` and provided as hint(s) through `schemaLocation` or `noNamespaceSchemaLocation` in the instance document. After the invocation of this routine, all loaded schema documents remain loaded and can be queried by `XmlSchemaLoadedList`. However, they will remain inactive. In the next validation session, inactive schema documents can be activated by specifying them through `XmlSchemaLoad` or providing them as hint(s) through `schemaLocation` or `noNamespaceSchemaLocation` in the new instance document. To unload a schema document and all its descendants (documents included or imported in a nested manner), use `XmlSchemaUnload`.

### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSchemaValidate(
    xsdctx *sctx,
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context
xctx	IN	XML top-level context
elem	IN	element node in the doc, to be validated

### **Returns**

(`xmlerr`) numeric error code, `XMLERR_OK` [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions\(\)](#)

## **XmlSchemaVersion()**

Return the version of this schema implementation.

### **Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlSchemaVersion();
```

### **Returns**

(`oratext` \*) version string [compiler encoding]



---

## Package SOAP APIs for C

W3C: "SOAP is a lightweight protocol for exchange of information in a decentralized, distributed environment. It is an XML based protocol that consists of three parts: an envelope that defines a framework for describing what is in a message and how to process it, a set of encoding rules for expressing instances of application-defined datatypes, and a convention for representing remote procedure calls and responses."

Attachments are not allowed in Soap 1.1. In Soap 1.2, body may not have other elements if Fault is present.

The structure of a SOAP message is:

```
[SOAP message (XML document)
  [SOAP envelope
    [SOAP header?
      element*
    ]
    [SOAP body
      (element* | Fault)?
    ]
  ]
]
```

**See Also:**

- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

## Package SOAP Interfaces

Table 9–1 summarizes the methods available through the SOAP package.

**Table 9–1 Summary of SOAP Package Interfaces**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlSoapAddBodyElement()</a> on page 9-3	Adds an element to a SOAP message body.
<a href="#">XmlSoapAddFaultReason()</a> on page 9-3	Adds additional Reason to Fault.
<a href="#">XmlSoapAddFaultSubDetail()</a> on page 9-4	Adds additional child to Fault Detail.
<a href="#">XmlSoapAddHeaderElement()</a> on page 9-4	Adds an element to a SOAP header.
<a href="#">XmlSoapCall()</a> on page 9-5	Sends a SOAP message then waits for a reply.
<a href="#">XmlSoapCreateConnection()</a> on page 9-5	Creates a SOAP connection object.
<a href="#">XmlSoapCreateCtx()</a> on page 9-6	Creates and returns a SOAP context.
<a href="#">XmlSoapCreateMsg()</a> on page 9-7	Creates and returns an empty SOAP message.
<a href="#">XmlSoapDestroyConnection()</a> on page 9-8	Destroys a SOAP connection object.
<a href="#">XmlSoapDestroyCtx()</a> on page 9-8	Destroys a SOAP context.
<a href="#">XmlSoapDestroyMsg()</a> on page 9-8	Destroys a SOAP message created with <code>XmlSoapCreateMsg</code> .
<a href="#">XmlSoapError()</a> on page 9-9	Gets a human readable error code.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetBody()</a> on page 9-9	Return a SOAP message's envelope body.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetBodyElement()</a> on page 9-10	Gets an element from a SOAP body.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetEnvelope()</a> on page 9-10	Returns a SOAP part's envelope.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetFault()</a> on page 9-11	Returns Fault code, reason, and details.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetHeader()</a> on page 9-11	Returns a SOAP message's envelope header.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetHeaderElement()</a> on page 9-12	Gets an element from a SOAP header.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetMustUnderstand()</a> on page 9-12	Gets mustUnderstand attribute from SOAP header element.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetReasonLang()</a> on page 9-13	Gets the language of a reason with the specified index.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetReasonNum()</a> on page 9-13	Determines the number of reasons in Fault element.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetRelay()</a> on page 9-14	Gets Relay attribute from SOAP header element.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetRole()</a> on page 9-14	Gets role from SOAP header element.
<a href="#">XmlSoapHasFault()</a> on page 9-15	Determines if SOAP message contains Fault object.
<a href="#">XmlSoapSetFault()</a> on page 9-15	Sets Fault in SOAP message.

**Table 9–1 (Cont.) Summary of SOAP Package Interfaces**


---

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand()</a> on page 9-16	Sets mustUnderstand attribute for SOAP header element.
<a href="#">XmlSoapSetRelay()</a> on page 9-16	Sets Relay attribute for a SOAP header element.
<a href="#">XmlSoapSetRole()</a> on page 9-17	Sets role for SOAP header element.

---

## XmlSoapAddBodyElement()

Adds an element to a SOAP message body. Sets the numeric error code.

### Syntax

```
xmlelemnode *XmlSoapAddBodyElement(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    oratext *qname,
    oratext *uri,
    xmller *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN/OUT	SOAP message
qname	IN	QName of element to add
uri	IN	Namespace URI of element to add
xerr	IN/OUT	Error code

---

### Returns

(xmlelemnode \*) created element

**See Also:** [XmlSoapAddHeaderElement\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapAddFaultReason()

Add additional Reason to Fault. The same reason text may be provided in different languages. When the fault is created, the primary language/reason is added at that time; use this function to add additional translations of the reason.

### Syntax

```
xmller XmlSoapAddFaultReason(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    ratext *reason,
    oratext *lang);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN/OUT	SOAP message

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
reason	IN	Human-readable fault Reason
lang	IN	Language of reason

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSoapSetFault\(\)](#)**XmISoapAddFaultSubDetail()**

Adds an additional child to Fault Detail. `XmlSoapSetFault` allows for creation of a Detail element with only one child. Extra children could be added with this function.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmISoapAddFaultSubDetail(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    xmlelemnode *sub);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN/OUT	SOAP message
sub	IN	subdetail tree

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSoapGetReasonLang\(\)](#)**XmISoapAddHeaderElement()**

Adds an element to a SOAP header.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode *XmISoapAddHeaderElement(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    oratext *qname,
    oratext *uri,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN/OUT	SOAP message
qname	IN	QName of element to add
uri	IN	Namespace URI of element to add

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xerr	IN/OUT	error code

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) created element

**See Also:** [XmlSoapAddBodyElement\(\)](#),  
[XmlSoapGetHeaderElement\(\)](#)

**XmlSoapCall()**

Send a SOAP message over a connection and wait for the response; the message reply (an XML document) is parsed and returned as a SOAP message (equivalent to a DOM).

The message buffer is first used to serialize the outgoing message; if it's too small (overflow occurs), xerr gets XMLERR\_SAVE\_OVERFLOW and NULL is returned. The same buffer is then re-used to receive the replied SOAP message.

Opening the connection object is expected to cause an active SOAP handler to appear on the end-point; how this happens is up to the user. For HTTP, the URL should invoke a cgi-bin, or detect the application/soap+xml content-type.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode *XmlSoapCall(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlsoapcon *con,
    xmlnode *msg,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
con	IN	SOAP connection object
msg	IN	SOAP message to send
xerr	IN	numeric code of failure

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) returned message, or NULL on failure with xerr set

**See Also:** [XmlSoapCreateMsg\(\)](#), [XmlSoapCreateConnection\(\)](#),  
[XmlSoapDestroyConnection\(\)](#)

**XmlSoapCreateConnection()**

Create a SOAP connection object, specifying the binding (transport) and endpoint. The binding is an enum of type xmlsoapbind, and the endpoint depends on the binding.

Currently only HTTP binding is supported, and the endpoint is a URL. That URL should be active, i.e. a cgi-bin script or some mechanism to trigger SOAP message processing based on the Content-type of the incoming message ("application/soap+xml").

To control the HTTP access method (GET or POST), use the web-method property named XMLSOAP\_PROP\_WEB\_METHOD which can have possible values XMLSOAP\_WEB\_METHOD\_GET and XMLSOAP\_WEB\_METHOD\_POST.

(conbuf, consiz) is the connection buffer used with LPU; for sending, it contains only the HTTP header, but on reception it holds the entire reply, including HTTP header and the full SOAP body. If no buffer is provided, one will be allocated for you. If size if zero, the default size (64K) will be used.

(msgbuf, msgsiz) is the message buffer used to form SOAP messages for sending. It needs to be large enough to contain the largest message which will be sent. If no buffer is specified, one will be allocated for you. If the size is zero, the default size (64K) will be used.

Two buffers are needed for sending since the SOAP message needs to be formed first in order to determine it's size; then, the HTTP header can be formed, since the Content-Length is now known.

### Syntax

```
xmlsoapcon *XmlSoapCreateConnection(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlerr *xerr,
    xmlsoapbind bind,
    void *endp,
    oratext *conbuf,
    ubig_ora consiz,
    oratext *msgbuf,
    ubig_ora msgsiz,
    ...);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
xerr	OUT	numeric error code on failure
bind	IN	connection binding
endp	IN	connection endpoint
conbuf	IN/OUT	connection buffer (or NULL to have one allocated)
consiz	IN	size of connection buffer (or 0 for default size)
msgbuf	IN/OUT	message buffer (or NULL to have one allocated)
msgsiz	IN	size of message buffer (or 0 for default size)
...	IN	additional HTTP headers to set, followed by NULL

### Returns

(xmlsoapcon \*) connect object, or NULL on error with xerr set

**See Also:** [XmlSoapDestroyConnection\(\)](#), [XmlSoapCall\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapCreateCtx()

Creates and returns a SOAP context. This context must be passed to all XmlSoap APIs. Note the name provided should be unique and is used to identify the context when debugging. Options are specified as (name, value) pairs, ending with a NULL, same as

for XmlCreate. If no options are desired, the NULL is still needed. Options are: debug\_level (enables SOAP debug output to stderr), numeric level (the higher the level, the more detailed extensive the output), 0 for no debug (this is the default setting).

### Syntax

```
xmlsoapctx *XmlSoapCreateCtx(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmller *xerr,
    oratext *name,
    ...);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
xerr	OUT	error return code on failure
name	IN	name of context; used for debugging
...	IN	options, as (name, value) pairs, followed by NULL

### Returns

(xmlsoapctx \*) SOAP context, or NULL on failure (w/xerr set)

**See Also:** [XmlSoapDestroyCtx\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapCreateMsg()

Creates and returns an empty SOAP message. The SOAP message will consist of an Envelope. The Envelope contains an empty Header and Body. A SOAP message is an XML document represented by a DOM, and is no different from any other XML document. All DOM operations are valid on the document, but be sure not to harm the overall structure. Changes should be restricted to creating and modifying elements inside the Header and Body.

### Syntax

```
xmldocnode *XmlSoapCreateMsg(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmller *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
xerr	OUT	error retrun code on failure

### Returns

(xmldocnode \*) SOAP message, or NULL on failure (w/xerr set)

**See Also:** [XmlSoapDestroyMsg\(\)](#)

## XmISoapDestroyConnection()

Destroys a SOAP connection object made with XmlSoapCreateConnection and frees all allocated resources.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSoapDestroyConnection(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlsoapcon *con);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
con	IN	SOAP connection

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSoapCreateConnection\(\)](#), [XmlSoapCall\(\)](#)

## XmISoapDestroyCtx()

Destroys a SOAP context created with XmlSoapCreateCtx. All memory allocated will be freed, and all connections closed.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSoapDestroyCtx(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSoapCreateCtx\(\)](#)

## XmISoapDestroyMsg()

Destroys a SOAP message created with XmlSoapCreateMsg; this is the same as calling XmlFreeDocument.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSoapDestroyMsg(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP connection

Parameter	In/Out	Description
msg	IN	SOAP message

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSoapCreateMsg\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapError()

Retrieves human readable representation of the error code. Optionally, retrieves the information about the error code of the underlying layer.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlSoapError(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlsoapcon *con,
    xmlerr err,
    uword *suberr,
    oratext **submsg);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
con	IN	Connection about which additional info is requested
err	IN	Error code for which human readable information will be returned.
suberr	OUT	Error code from con
submsg	OUT	Human readable information about con error

**Returns**

(oratext \*) error code

## XmlSoapGetBody()

Returns a SOAP message's envelope body.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode *XmlSoapGetBody(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message
xmlerr	IN/OUT	error code

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) SOAP Body

**See Also:** [XmlSoapGetHeader\(\)](#)**XmISoapGetBodyElement()**

Gets an element from a SOAP body.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode *XmISoapGetBodyElement(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local,
    xmller *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message
uri	IN	Namespace URI of element to get
local	IN	Local name of element to get
xerr	IN/OUT	error code

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) named element, or NULL on error

**See Also:** [XmlSoapAddBodyElement\(\)](#)**XmISoapGetEnvelope()**

Returns a SOAP part's envelope

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode *XmISoapGetEnvelope(
    mlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    xmller *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message
xerr	IN/OUT	error code

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) SOAP envelope

## XmISoapGetFault()

Returns Fault code, reason, and details. Fetches the Fault information and returns through user variables. NULL may be supplied for any part which is not needed. For lang, if the pointed-to variable is NULL, it will be set to the default language (that of the first reason).

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmISoapGetFault(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    oratext **code,
    oratext **reason,
    oratext **lang,
    oratext **node,
    oratext **role,
    xmlelemnode **detail);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN/OUT	SOAP message
code	OUT	Code (1.2), faultcode (1.1)
reason	OUT	Human-readable fault Reason (1.2), faultreason (1.1)
lang	IN	Desired language for reason (1.2), not used ( NULL in 1.1)
node	OUT	Fault node
role	OUT	Role: next, none, or ultimte receiver. Not used in 1.1
detail	OUT	User-defined details

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmISoapSetFault\(\)](#)

## XmISoapGetHeader()

Returns a SOAP message's envelope header.

### Syntax

```
xmlelemnode *XmISoapGetHeader(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message
xerr	IN/OUT	error code

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) SOAP header

**See Also:** [XmlSoapGetBody\(\)](#)**XmISoapGetHeaderElement()**

Gets an element from a SOAP header. Sets a numeric error code.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode *XmISoapGetHeaderElement (
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local,
    xmterr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message
uri	IN	Namespace URI of element to get
local	IN	Local name of element to get
xerr	IN/OUT	Error code

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) named element, or NULL on error

**See Also:** [XmlSoapAddHeaderElement\(\)](#),  
[XmlSoapGetBodyElement\(\)](#)**XmISoapGetMustUnderstand()**

Gets mustUnderstand attribute from SOAP header element. The absence of this attribute is not an error and treated as value FALSE. To indicate the absence of an attribute, the error code XMLERR\_SOAP\_NO\_MUST\_UNDERSTAND is returned in this case, XMLERR\_OK (0) is returned if the attribute is present. Other appropriate error codes might be returned. User supplied mustUnderstand value is set accordingly.

**Syntax**

```
xmterr XmISoapGetMustUnderstand(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    boolean *mustUnderstand);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
elem	IN	SOAP header element

Parameter	In/Out	Description
mustUnderstand	OUT	mustUnderstand value, TRUE   FALSE

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSoapAddBodyElement\(\)](#),  
[XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand\(\)](#)

**XmlSoapGetReasonLang()**

Gets the language of a reason with a particular index.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSoapGetReasonLang(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    ub4 index,
    oratext **lang);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message
indx	IN	Index of fault reason
lang	IN	Reason language

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSoapGetFault\(\)](#), [XmlSoapHasFault\(\)](#),  
[XmlSoapGetReasonNum\(\)](#)

**XmlSoapGetReasonNum()**

Determines the number of reasons in Fault element. Returns 0 if Fault is not present.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlSoapGetReasonNum(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message

**Returns**

(ub4 \*) #num reasons

**See Also:** [XmlSoapGetFault\(\)](#), [XmlSoapHasFault\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapGetRelay()

Gets Relay attribute from SOAP header element.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSoapGetRelay(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    boolean *Relay);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
elem	IN	SOAP header element
Relay	OUT	Relay value

### Returns

xmlerr numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK on success

**See Also:** [XmlSoapAddBodyElement\(\)](#), [XmlSoapSetRelay\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapGetRole()

Gets role from SOAP header element. If the element has no role, XMLERR\_SOAP\_NO\_ROLE is returned, otherwise XMLERR\_OK (0) is returned and the user's role is set accordingly. if the element has no role, then according to the standard, the user's role is set to XMLSOAP\_ROLE\_ULT.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSoapGetRole(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    xmlsoaprole *role);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
elem	IN	SOAP header element
role	OUT	Role value

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand\(\)](#), [XmlSoapSetRole\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapHasFault()

Determines if SOAP message contains Fault object.

### Syntax

```
boolean XmlSoapHasFault(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    xmterr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message
xerr	IN/OUT	Error code

### Returns

(boolean) TRUE if there's a Fault, FALSE if not

**See Also:** [XmlSoapGetFault\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapSetFault()

Sets Fault in SOAP message.

- In version 1.2, only one Fault is allowed for each message, and it must be the only child of the Body. If the Body has children, they are first removed and freed. The Fault is then added with children code - "env:Code" (required), reason - "env:Reason" (required), node - "env:Node" (optional), role - "env:role"(optional), and detail - "env:Detail" (optional). The primary-language reason should be added first; calls to XmlSoapGetFault which pass a NULL language will pick this reason. Detail is the user-defined subtree to be spliced into the Fault.
- In version 1.1, only one Fault is allowed per message. If the Body already has Fault, it is first removed and freed. The Fault is then added with children code - "faultcode" (required), reason - "faultstring" (required), node - "faultactor" (optional), and detail - "detail" (optional). Detail is the user-defined subtree to be spliced into the Fault. role and lang are not used in ver 1.1

### Syntax

```
xmterr XmlSoapSetFault(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    oratext *node,
    oratext *code,
    oratext *reason,
    oratext *lang,
    oratext *role,
    xmlelemnode *detail);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
msg	IN/OUT	SOAP message
node	IN	URI of SOAP node which faulted, Node (1.2), faultactor(1.1)
code	IN	Code (1.2), faultcode (1.1)
reason	IN	Human-readable fault Reason (1.2), faultreason (1.1)
lang	IN	Language of reason (1.2), unused (1.1)
role	IN	URI representing role, Role (1.2), unused (1.1)
detail	IN	detail elements (user-defined)

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSoapAddFaultReason\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand()

Sets mustUnderstand attribute for SOAP header element. According to the standard, if the value is FALSE, the attribute is not set.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    boolean mustUnderstand);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
elem	IN/OUT	SOAP header element
mustUnderstand	IN	mustUnderstand value, TRUE   FALSE

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSoapSetRole\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapSetRelay()

Sets Relay attribute for a SOAP header element. If the value is FALSE, the attribute is not set.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSoapSetRelay(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    boolean Relay);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
elem	IN/OUT	SOAP header element
Relay	IN	Relay; TRUE   FALSE

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlSoapGetRelay\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapSetRole()

Sets role for SOAP header element. If the role specified is XMLSOAP\_ROLE\_ULT, then according to the standard the attribute is not set.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSoapSetRole(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    xmlsoaprole role);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
elem	IN/OUT	SOAP header element
role	IN	Role value

**Returns**

xmlerr numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK on success

**See Also:** [XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand\(\)](#)



# 10

---

## Package Traversal APIs for C

Package Traversal contains APIs for four interfaces.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [DocumentTraversal Interface](#)
- [NodeFilter Interface](#)
- [NodeIterator Interface](#)
- [TreeWalker Interface](#)

**See Also:**

- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

## DocumentTraversal Interface

[Table 10–1](#) summarizes the methods available through the DocumentTraversal interface.

**Table 10–1 Summary of DocumentTraversal Methods; Traversal Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateNodeIter()</a> on page 10-2	Create node iterator object.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateTreeWalker()</a> on page 10-3	Create a tree walker object.

### XmlDomCreateNodeIter()

One of two methods of DocumentTraversal interface, used to create a NodeIterator object. This method is identical to [XmlDomCreateTreeWalker\(\)](#) except for the type of object returned.

The whatToShow argument is a mask of flag bits, one for each node type. The value XMLDOM\_SHOW\_ALL passes all node types through, otherwise only the types whose bits are set will be passed.

Entity reference expansion is controlled by the entrefExpansion flag. If TRUE, entity references are replaced with their final content; if FALSE, entity references are left as nodes.

#### Syntax

```
xmliter* XmlDomCreateNodeIter(
    xmldctx *xctx,
    xmliter *iter,
    xmlnode *root,
    xmlshowbits whatToShow,
    XMLDOM_ACCEPT_NODE_F(
        (*nodeFilter),
        xctx,
        node),
    boolean entrefExpand);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
iter	IN	existing NodeIterator to set, NULL to create
xerr	IN	root node for NodeIterator
whatToShow	IN	mask of XMLDOM_SHOW_XXX flag bits
nodeFilter	IN	node filter to be used, NULL if none
xerr	IN	whether to expand entity reference nodes

#### Returns

(xmliter \*) original or new NodeIterator object

**See Also:** [XmlDomCreateTreeWalker\(\)](#)

## XmldomCreateTreeWalker()

One of two methods of DocumentTraversal interface, used to create a TreeWalker object. This method is identical to [XmldomCreateNodeIter\(\)](#) except for the type of object returned.

The whatToShow argument is a mask of flag bits, one for each node type. The value XMLDOM\_SHOW\_ALL passes all node types through, otherwise only the types whose bits are set will be passed.

Entity reference expansion is controlled by the entrefExpansion flag. If TRUE, entity references are replaced with their final content; if FALSE, entity references are left as nodes.

### Syntax

```
xmlwalk* XmldomCreateTreeWalker(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk* walker,
    xmlnode *root,
    xmlshowbits whatToShow,
    XMLDOM_ACCEPT_NODE_F(
        (*nodeFilter),
        xctx,
        node),
    boolean entrefExpansion);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	existing TreeWalker to set, NULL to create
xerr	IN	root node for TreeWalker
whatToShow	IN	mask of XMLDOM_SHOW_XXX flag bits
nodeFilter	IN	node filter to be used, NULL if none
xerr	IN	whether to expand entity reference nodes

### Returns

(xmlwalk \*) new TreeWalker object

**See Also:** [XmldomCreateNodeIter\(\)](#)

## NodeFilter Interface

Table 10–2 summarizes the methods available through the NodeFilter interface.

**Table 10–2 Summary of NodeFileter Methods; Traversal Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XMDOM_ACCEPT_NODE_F()</a>	Determines the filtering action based on node adn filter.. on page 10-4

### XMDOM\_ACCEPT\_NODE\_F()

Sole method of NodeFilter interface. Given a node and a filter, determines the filtering action to perform.

This function pointer is passed to the node iterator/tree walker methods, as needed.

Values for xmlerr are:

- XMLERR\_OK Accept the node. Navigation methods defined for NodeIterator or TreeWalker will return this node.
- XMLERR\_FILTER\_REJECT Reject the node. Navigation methods defined for NodeIterator or TreeWalker will not return this node. For TreeWalker, the children of this node will also be rejected. NodeIterators treat this as a synonym for XMLDOM\_FILTER\_SKIP
- XMLERR\_FILTER\_SKIP Skip this single node. Navigation methods defined for NodeIterator or TreeWalker will not return this node. For both NodeIterator and TreeWalker, the children of this node will still be considered.

#### Syntax

```
#define XMDOM_ACCEPT_NODE_F(func, xctx, node)
xmlerr func(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	node to test

#### Returns

(xmlerr) filtering result

## NodeIterator Interface

Table 10–3 summarizes the methods available through the NodeIterator interface.

**Table 10–3 Summary of NodeIterator Methods; Package Traversal**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomIterDetach()</a> on page 10-5	Detach a node iterator (deactivate it).
<a href="#">XmlDomIterNextNode()</a> on page 10-5	Returns next node for iterator.
<a href="#">XmlDomIterPrevNode()</a> on page 10-6	Returns previous node for iterator.

### XmlDomIterDetach()

Detaches the NodeIterator from the set which it iterated over, releasing any resources and placing the iterator in the INVALID state. After detach has been invoked, calls to XmlDomIterNextNode or XmlDomIterPrevNode will raise the exception XMLERR\_ITER\_DETACHED.

#### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomIterDetach(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmliter *iter);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
iter	IN	node iterator object

**See Also:** [XmlDomIterNextNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomIterPrevNode\(\)](#)

### XmlDomIterNextNode()

Returns the next node in the set and advances the position of the iterator in the set. After a node iterator is created, the first call to XmlDomIterNextNode returns the first node in the set. It assumed that the reference node (current iterator position) is never deleted. Otherwise, changes in the underlying DOM tree do not invalidate the iterator.

#### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomIterNextNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmliter *iter,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
iter	IN	node iterator object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) next node in set being iterated over [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomIterPrevNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomIterDetach\(\)](#)

## XmlDomIterPrevNode()

Returns the previous node in the set and moves the position of the iterator backward in the set.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomIterPrevNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmliter *iter,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
iter	IN	node iterator object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) previous node in set being iterated over [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomIterNextNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomIterDetach\(\)](#)

## TreeWalker Interface

[Table 10–4](#) summarizes the methods available through the TreeWalker interface.

**Table 10–4 Summary of TreeWalker Methods; Traversal Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerFirstChild()</a> on page 10-7	Return first visible child of current node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerGetCurrentNode()</a> on page 10-7	Return current node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerGetRoot()</a> on page 10-8	Return root node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerLastChild()</a> on page 10-8	Return last visible child of current node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerNextNode()</a> on page 10-9	Return next visible node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerNextSibling()</a> on page 10-9	Return next sibling node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerParentNode()</a> on page 10-10	Return parent node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerPrevNode()</a> on page 10-10	Return previous node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling()</a> on page 10-11	Return previous sibling node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerSetCurrentNode()</a> on page 10-11	Set current node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerSetRoot()</a> on page 10-12	Set the root node.

### XmlDomWalkerFirstChild()

Moves the TreeWalker to the first visible child of the current node, and returns the new node. If the current node has no visible children, returns NULL, and retains the current node.

#### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerFirstChild(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmller *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

#### Returns

(xmlnode \*) first visible child [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomWalkerLastChild\(\)](#)

### XmlDomWalkerGetCurrentNode()

Return (get) current node, or NULL on error.

## Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerGetCurrentNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

## Returns

(xmlnode \*) current node

## XmlDomWalkerGetRoot()

Return (get) root node, or NULL on error. Since the current node can be removed from under the root node together with a subtree where it belongs to, the current root node in a walker might have no relation to the current node any more. The TreeWalker iterations are based on the current node. However, the root node defines the space of an iteration. This function checks if the root node is still in the root node (ancestor) relation to the current node. If so, it returns this root node. Otherwise, it finds the root of the tree where the current node belongs to, and sets and returns this root as the root node of the walker. It returns NULL if the walker is a NULL pointer.

## Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerGetRoot(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

## Returns

(xmlnode \*) root node

## XmlDomWalkerLastChild()

Moves the TreeWalker to the last visible child of the current node, and returns the new node. If the current node has no visible children, returns NULL, and retains the current node.

## Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerLastChild(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) last visible children [or NULL]

**XmldomWalkerNextNode()**

Moves the TreeWalker to the next visible node in document order relative to the current node, and returns the new node. If the current node has no next node, or if the search for the next node attempts to step upward from the TreeWalker's root node, returns NULL, and retains the current node.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmldomWalkerNextNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmterr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) next node [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmldomWalkerPrevNode\(\)](#),  
[XmldomWalkerNextSibling\(\)](#), [XmldomWalkerPrevSibling\(\)](#)

**XmldomWalkerNextSibling()**

Moves the TreeWalker to the next sibling of the current node, and returns the new node. If the current node has no visible next sibling, returns NULL, and retains the current node.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmldomWalkerNextSibling(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmterr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) next sibling [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomWalkerNextNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomWalkerPrevNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling\(\)](#)

**XmlDomWalkerParentNode()**

Moves to and returns the closest visible ancestor node of the current node. If the search for the parent node attempts to step upward from the TreeWalker's root node, or if it fails to find a visible ancestor node, this method retains the current position and returns null.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerParentNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) parent node [or NULL]

**XmlDomWalkerPrevNode()**

Moves the TreeWalker to the previous visible node in document order relative to the current node, and returns the new node. If the current node has no previous node, or if the search for the previous node attempts to step upward from the TreeWalker's root node, returns NULL, and retains the current node.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerPrevNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) previous node [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomWalkerNextNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomWalkerNextSibling\(\)](#), [XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling\(\)](#)

**XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling()**

Moves the TreeWalker to the previous sibling of the current node, and returns the new node. If the current node has no visible previous sibling, returns NULL, and retains the current node.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) previous sibling [or NULL]

**See Also:** [XmlDomWalkerNextNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomWalkerPrevNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomWalkerNextSibling\(\)](#)

**XmlDomWalkerSetCurrentNode()**

Sets and returns new current node. It also checks if the root node is an ancestor of the new current node. If not it does not set the current node, returns NULL, and sets retval to XMLDOM\_WALKER\_BAD\_NEW\_CUR. Returns NULL if an error.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerSetCurrentNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmlnode *node,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
node	IN	new current node
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**`(xmlnode *) new current node`**XmlDomWalkerSetRoot()**

Set the root node. Returns new root node if it is an ancestor of the current node. If not it signals an error and checks if the current root node is an ancestor of the current node. If yes it returns it. Otherwise it sets the root node to and returns the root of the tree where the current node belongs to. It returns NULL if the walker or the root node parameter is a NULL pointer.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerSetRoot(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlwalk *walker,  
    xmlnode *node,  
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
node	IN	new root node
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**`(xmlnode *) new root node`

# 11

---

## Package XML APIs for C

This C implementation of the XML processor (or parser) follows the W3C XML specification (rev REC-xml-19980210) and implements the required behavior of an XML processor in terms of how it must read XML data and the information it must provide to the application.

This chapter contains the following section:

- [XML Interface](#)

**See Also:**

- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

## XML Interface

Table 11–1 summarizes the methods available through the XML interface.

**Table 11–1 Summary of XML Methods**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlAccess()</a> on page 11-2	Set access method callbacks for URL.
<a href="#">XmlCreate()</a> on page 11-3	Create an XML Developer's Toolkit <code>xmlctx</code> .
<a href="#">XmlCreateDTD()</a> on page 11-5	Create DTD.
<a href="#">XmlCreateDocument()</a> on page 11-5	Create Document (node).
<a href="#">XmlDestroy()</a> on page 11-6	Destroy an <code>xmlctx</code> .
<a href="#">XmlDiff()</a> on page 11-6	Compares two XML documents.
<a href="#">XmlFreeDocument()</a> on page 11-7	Free a document (releases all resources).
<a href="#">XmlGetEncoding()</a> on page 11-8	Returns data encoding in use by XML context.
<a href="#">XmlHasFeature()</a> on page 11-8	Determine if DOM feature is implemented.
<a href="#">XmlIsSimple()</a> on page 11-9	Returns single-byte (simple) character set flag.
<a href="#">XmlIsUnicode()</a> on page 11-9	Returns <code>XmlIsUnicode</code> (simple) character set flag.
<a href="#">XmlLoadDom()</a> on page 11-9	Load (parse) an XML document and produce a DOM.
<a href="#">XmlLoadSax()</a> on page 11-11	Load (parse) an XML document from and produce SAX events.
<a href="#">XmlLoadSaxVA()</a> on page 11-11	Load (parse) an XML document from and produce SAX events [ <code>varargs</code> ].
<a href="#">XmlSaveDom()</a> on page 11-12	Saves (serializes, formats) an XML document.
<a href="#">XmlVersion()</a> on page 11-13	Returns version string for XDK.

### XmIAccess()

Sets the open/read/close callbacks used to load data for a specific URL access method. Overrides the built-in data loading functions for HTTP, FTP, and so on, or provides functions to handle new types, such as UNKNOWN.

#### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlAccess (
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlurlacc access,
    void *userctx,
    XML_ACCESS_OPEN_F(
        (*openf),
        ctx,
        uri,
        parts,
        length,
        uh),
    XML_ACCESS_READ_F(
        (*readf),
```

---

```

    ctx,
    uh,
    data,
    nraw,
    eoi),
XML_ACCESS_CLOSE_F(
    (*closef),
    ctx,
    uh));

```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
access	IN	URL access method
userctx	IN	user-defined context passed to callbacks
openf	IN	open-access callback function
readf	IN	read-access callback function
closef	IN	close-access callback function

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlLoadDom\(\)](#), [XmlLoadSax\(\)](#)

## XmlCreate()

Create an XML Developer's Toolkit xmlctx.

### Syntax

```

xmlctx *XmlCreate(
    xmlerr *err,
    oratext *name,
    list);

```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
err	OUT	returned error code
access	IN	name of context, for debugging

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<i>list</i>	IN	<p>NULL-terminated list of variable arguments. Properties common to all <code>xmlctx</code>'s, both XDK and XMLType, are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>data_encoding</code> is the data encoding in which XML data will be presented through DOM and SAX. Default is UTF-8 and UTF-E on EBCDIC platforms. Single-byte encodings are substantially faster than multibyte encodings; Unicode (UTF-16) uses more memory but has better performance than multibyte.</li> <li>■ <code>default_input_encoding</code> is the default input encoding. If the encoding of an input document cannot be automatically determined through other methods, this encoding will be the default.</li> <li>■ <code>error_language</code> is the language (and optional encoding) in which error messages are created. Default is American with UTF-8 encoding. To specify only the language, give the name of the language ("American"). To also specify the encoding, add the period and the Oracle name of the encoding ("American.WE8ISO8859P1").</li> <li>■ <code>error_handler</code> is the function pointer; see <code>XML_ERRMSG_F</code>. By default, errors output the formatted message to <code>stderr</code>. If an error handler is provided, message will be passed to it, and not printed.</li> <li>■ <code>error_context</code> is user-defined context for error handler, a context pointer to be passed to the error handler function. It is user-defined; it is just specified here and passed along when an error occurs.</li> <li>■ <code>input_encoding</code> is the name of a forced input encoding for input documents. Use it to override a document's <code>XMLDecl</code>, and always interpret it in the given encoding. It should be not necessary in normal use, as existing BOMs and <code>XMLDecl</code>s should be correct.</li> <li>■ <code>memory_alloc</code> is a low-level memory allocation function, if not using <code>malloc</code>. If used, the matching free function must also be given. See <code>XML_ALLOC_F</code>.</li> <li>■ <code>memory_free</code> is a low-level memory freeing function, if not using <code>free</code>. Matches the <code>memory_alloc</code> function.</li> <li>■ <code>memory_context</code> is a user-defined memory context passed to the alloc and free functions. Its definition and use is entirely up to the user; it is just set here and passed to the callbacks.</li> </ul> <p>The XDK has additional properties:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>input_buffer_size</code> is the basic I/O buffer size. Default is 256K; the range is 4K to 4MB. Depending on the encoding, 1, 2 or 3 of these buffers may be needed. Note that size is in characters, not bytes. If the buffer holds Unicode data, it will be twice as large.</li> <li>■ <code>memory_block_size</code> is the size of chunk the high-level memory package will request from the low-level allocator; it is the basic unit of memory allocation. Default is 64K; the range is 16K to 256K.</li> </ul> <p>These optional parameters should be used in the following manner:</p> <pre>xmlctx *XmlCreate(     xmlerr *err,     oratext *name,     ("data_encoding", <i>dataEncoding</i>) ,     ("default_data_encoding", <i>defaultDataEncoding</i>) ,     ("error_language", <i>errorLanguage</i>) ,     ("error_handler", <i>errorHandler</i>) ,     ("error_context", <i>errorContext</i>)     ("input_encoding", <i>inputEncoding</i>) ,     ("memory_alloc", <i>memAlloc</i>) ,     ("memory_free", <i>memFree</i>) ,     ("memory_context", <i>memContext</i>) ,     ("input_buffer_seize", <i>inputBufSize</i>) ,     ("memory_block_size", <i>memBlockSize</i>) );</pre>

**Returns**

(xmlctx \*) created xmlctx [or NULL on error with err set]

**See Also:** [XmlDestroy\(\)](#), [XML\\_ERRMSG\\_F\(\)](#) in Chapter 2,  
"Package Callback APIs for C"

**XmlCreateDTD()**

Create DTD.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlCreateDTD(
    xmlctx *xctx
    oratext *qname,
    oratext *pubid,
    oratext *sysid,
    xmlerr *err);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
qname	IN	qualified name
pubid	IN	external subset public identifier
sysid	IN	external subset system identifier
err	OUT	returned error code

**Returns**

(xmldtdnode \*) new DTD node

**XmlCreateDocument()**

Creates the initial top-level DOCUMENT node and its supporting infrastructure. If a qualified name is provided, a an element with that name is created and set as the document's root element.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlCreateDocument (
    xmlctx *xctx,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *qname,
    xmldtdnode *dtd,
    xmlerr *err);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
uri	IN	namespace URI of root element to create, or NULL
qname	IN	qualified name of root element, or NULL if none
dtd	IN	associated DTD node
err	OUT	returned error code

**Returns**

(xmldocnode \*) new Document object.

**XmIDestroy()**

Destroys an XML context.

**Syntax**

```
void XmIDestroy(
    xmllctx *xctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

**See Also:** [XmlCreate\(\)](#)

**XmIDiff()**

Compares two XML documents, specified either as DOM Trees, files, URIs, orastreams, and so on, and returns its document node. If input documents are not supplied as DOM trees, DOM trees will be created for them.

If the inputs are DOMs, that memory will not be freed when the call completes.

Data(DOM) encoding of both the documents must be the same as the data encoding in the XML context. The DOM for the diff will be created in the data encoding specified by the XML context.

**Syntax**

```
xmldocnode *XmIDiff(
    xmllctx *xctx,
    xmllerr *err,
    ub4 flags,
    xmldfsrct firstSourceType,
    void *firstSource,
    void *firstSourceExtra,
    xmldfsrct secondSourceType,
    void *secondSource,
    void *secondSourceExtra,
    uword hashLevel);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
err	OUT	numeric error code, XMLERR_OK [0] on success

Parameter	In/Out	Description
flags	IN	<p>Comparison options. By default, global algorithm and snapshot model are used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ XMLDF_FL_DEFAULTS (=0) chooses defaults</li> <li>■ XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_GLOBAL is the global algorithm; it will generate the minimal diff using INSERT, APPEND, DELETE and UPDATE, and needs more memory and time than XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_LOCAL</li> <li>■ XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_LOCAL is the local algorithm; it may not generate the minimal diff, but it is faster and uses less space than XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_GLOBAL</li> <li>■ XMLDF_FL_DISABLE_UPDATE disables update operations with global algorithms</li> <li>■ XMLDF_FL_OUTPUT_SNAPSHOT uses the snapshot model</li> </ul>
firstSourceType	IN	Source type for the first document. If 0, assumed to be a DOM document node.
firstSource	IN	Pointer to the first document source
firstSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the first document source; used for the buffer length pointer.
secondSourceType	IN	Source type for the second document. If 0, assumed to be a DOM document node.
secondSource	IN	Pointer to the second document source
secondSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the second document source; used for the buffer length pointer.
hashLevel	IN	<p>1-based depth (counting from the root), where hashing should be used for subtrees. Values less than or equal to 1 indicate no hashing. This value must be specified programmatically.</p> <p>The hash value for every element node is associated with the entire subtree rooted at that node. During the computation of the diff, there is no further drilling down into the tree beyond hash level depth.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If hashing is used with XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_GLOBAL, it will speed up diff computation significantly, but may reduce the quality of the diff.</li> <li>■ With XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_LOCAL, it improves the quality of the diff</li> </ul>

## XmlFreeDocument()

Destroys a document created by XmlCreateDocument or through one of the Load functions. Releases all resources associated with the document, which is then invalid.

### Syntax

```
void XmlFreeDocument(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	document to free

**See Also:** [XmlCreateDocument\(\)](#), [XmlLoadDom\(\)](#)

## XmlGetEncoding()

Returns data encoding in use by XML context. Ordinarily, the data encoding is chosen by the user, so this function is not needed. However, if the data encoding is not specified, and allowed to default, this function can be used to return the name of that default encoding.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlGetEncoding(
    xmlctx *xctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

### Returns

(oratext \*) name of data encoding

**See Also:** [XmlIsSimple\(\)](#), [XmlIsUnicode\(\)](#)

## XmlHasFeature()

Determine if a DOM feature is implemented. Returns TRUE if the feature is implemented in the specified version, FALSE otherwise.

In level 1, the legal values for package are 'HTML' and 'XML' (case-insensitive), and the version is the string "1.0". If the version is not specified, supporting any version of the feature will cause the method to return TRUE.

- DOM 1.0 features are "XML" and "HTML".
- DOM 2.0 features are "Core", "XML", "HTML", "Views", "StyleSheets", "CSS", "CSS2", "Events", "UIEvents", "MouseEvents", "MutationEvents", "HTMLEvents", "Range", "Traversal"

### Syntax

```
boolean XmlHasFeature(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    oratext *feature,
    oratext *version);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
feature	IN	package name of the feature to test

Parameter	In/Out	Description
version	IN	version number of the package name to test

**Returns**

(boolean) feature is implemented?

**XmllsSimple()**

Returns a flag saying whether the context's data encoding is "simple", single-byte for each character, like ASCII or EBCDIC.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmllsSimple(
    xmlctx *xctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE of data encoding is "simple", FALSE otherwise

**See Also:** [XmlGetEncoding\(\)](#), [XmllsUnicode\(\)](#)

**XmllsUnicode()**

Returns a flag saying whether the context's data encoding is Unicode, UTF-16, with two-byte for each character.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmllsUnicode(
    xmlctx *xctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE of data encoding is Unicode, FALSE otherwise

**See Also:** [XmlGetEncoding\(\)](#), [XmllsSimple\(\)](#)

**XmlLoadDom()**

Loads (parses) an XML document from an input source and creates a DOM. The root document node is returned on success, or NULL on failure (with err set).

The function takes two fixed arguments, the xmlctx and an error return code, then zero or more (property, value) pairs, then NULL.

SOURCE Input source is set by one of the following mutually exclusive properties (choose one):

- ("uri", document URI) [compiler encoding]
- ("file", document filesystem path) [compiler encoding]
- ("buffer", address of buffer, "buffer\_length", # bytes in buffer)
- ("stream", address of stream object, "stream\_context", pointer to stream object's context)
- ("stdio", FILE\* stream)

PROPERTIES Additional properties:

- ("dtd", DTD node) DTD for document
- ("base\_uri", document base URI) for documents loaded from other sources than a URI, sets the effective base URI. the document's base URI is needed in order to resolve relative URI include, import, and so on.
- ("input\_encoding", encoding name) forced input encoding [name]
- ("default\_input\_encoding", encoding\_name) default input encoding to assume if document is not self-describing (no BOM, protocol header, XMLDecl, and so on)
- ("schema\_location", string) schemaLocation of schema for this document. used to figure optimal layout when loading documents into a database
- ("validate", boolean) when TRUE, turns on DTD validation; by default, only well-formedness is checked. note that schema validation is a separate beast.
- ("discard\_whitespace", boolean) when TRUE, formatting whitespace between elements (newlines and indentation) in input documents is discarded. by default, ALL input characters are preserved.
- ("dtd\_only", boolean) when TRUE, parses an external DTD, not a complete XML document.
- ("stop\_on\_warning", boolean) when TRUE, warnings are treated the same as errors and cause parsing, validation, and so on, to stop immediately. by default, warnings are issued but the game continues.
- ("warn\_duplicate\_entity", boolean) when TRUE, entities which are declared more than once will cause warnings to be issued. the default is to accept the first declaration and silently ignore the rest.
- ("no\_expand\_char\_ref", boolean) when TRUE, causes character references to be left unexpanded in the DOM data. ordinarily, character references are replaced by the character they represent. however, when a document is saved those characters entities do not reappear. to way to ensure they remain through load and save is to not expand them.
- ("no\_check\_chars", boolean) when TRUE, omits the test of XML [2] Char production: all input characters will be accepted as valid

## Syntax

```
xmlnode *XmlLoadDom(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlerr *err,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
err	OUT	returned error code
<i>list</i>	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable arguments

**Returns**

(xmlDocnode \*) document node on success [NULL on failure with err set]

**See Also:** [XmlSaveDom\(\)](#)**XmlLoadSax()**

Loads (parses) an XML document from an input source and generates a set of SAX events (as user callbacks). Input sources and basic set of properties is the same as for `XmlLoadDom`.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlLoadSax(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlsaxcb *saxcb,
    void *saxctx,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
saxcb	IN	SAX callback structure
saxctx	IN	context passed to SAX callbacks
<i>list</i>	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable arguments

**Returns**(xmlerr) numeric error code, `XMLERR_OK` [0] on success**XmlLoadSaxVA()**

Loads (parses) an XML document from an input source and generates a set of SAX events (as user callbacks). Input sources and basic set of properties is the same as for `XmlLoadDom`.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlLoadSaxVA(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlsaxcb *saxcb,
    void *saxctx,
    va_list va);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
saxcb	IN	SAX callback structure
saxctx	IN	context passed to SAX callbacks
va	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable arguments

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**XmlSaveDom()**

Serializes document or subtree to the given destination and returns the number of bytes written; if no destination is provided, just returns formatted size but does not output.

If an output encoding is specified, the document will be re-encoded on output; otherwise, it will be in its existing encoding.

The top level is indented step\*level spaces, the next level step\*(level+1) spaces, and so on.

When saving to a buffer, if the buffer overflows, 0 is returned and err is set to XMLERR\_SAVE\_OVERFLOW.

DESTINATION Output destination is set by one of the following mutually exclusive properties (choose one):

- ("uri", document URI) POST, PUT? [compiler encoding]
- ("file", document filesystem path) [compiler encoding]
- ("buffer", address of buffer, "buffer\_length", # bytes in buffer)
- ("stream", address of stream object, "stream\_context", pointer to stream object's context)

PROPERTIES Additional properties:

- ("output\_encoding", encoding name) name of final encoding for document. unless specified, saved document will be in same encoding as xmlctx.
- ("indent\_step", unsigned) spaces to indent each level of output. default is 4, 0 means no indentation.
- ("indent\_level", unsigned) initial indentation level. default is 0, which means no indentation, flush left.
- ("xmldecl", boolean) include an XMLDecl in the output document. ordinarily an XMLDecl is output for a complete document (root node is DOC).
- ("bom", boolean) input a BOM in the output document. usually the BOM is only needed for certain encodings (UTF-16), and optional for others (UTF-8). causes optional BOMs to be output.
- ("prune", boolean) prunes the output like the unix 'find' command; does not descend to children, just prints the one node given.

**Syntax**

```
ubig_ora XmlSaveDom(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlerr *err,
```

---

```
xmlnode *root,
list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
err	OUT	error code on failure
root	IN	root node or subtree to save
list	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable arguments

**Returns**

(ubig\_ora) number of bytes written to destination

**See Also:** [XmlLoadDom\(\)](#)

**XmlVersion()**

Returns the version string for the XDK

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlVersion();
```

**Returns**

(oratext \*) version string



# 12

---

## Package XmlDiff APIs for C

The methods of the package `XmlDiff` allow you to compare and modify XML documents. The `XmlDiff()` and `XmlPatch()` methods are generally equivalent to UNIX commands `diff` and `patch`, and in addition are optimized for, and aware of XML.

This chapter contains this section:

- [XmlDiff Interface](#)

**See Also:**

- "C XML Differences" in *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

## XmlDiff Interface

Table 12–1 summarizes the methods available through the XmlDiff interface.

**Table 12–1 Summary of XmlDiff Methods**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDiff()</a> on page 12-2	Determines the changes between two XML documents.
<a href="#">XmlHash()</a> on page 12-3	Computes a hash value for an XML document or a node in DOM.
<a href="#">XmlPatch()</a> on page 12-4	Applies changes on input XML document.

### XmlDiff()

Determines the changes between two XML documents.

[XmlDiff\(\)](#) captures the diff between two documents in an XML format that conforms to the xdiff XML schema; you can customize this output.

These input documents can be specified either as DOM Trees, files, URI, or a stream, and so on. DOM trees for both the inputs will be created if they are not supplied as DOM trees. The DOM for the diff document is created, and the doc node is returned.

If the caller supplies inputs as DOMs, the memory for the DOMs will not be freed.

Data (DOM) encoding of both documents must be the same as the data encoding in `xctx`. The diff DOM will be created in the data encoding specified in `xctx`.

There are four algorithms that can be run in [XmlDiff\(\)](#): global, local, global with hashing, and local with hashing. The diff may be different in the four cases.

The global algorithm will generate minimal diff using insert, append, delete and update operations. It needs more memory and time than the local algorithm. The local algorithm may not generate minimal diff, but is faster and uses less space than the global algorithm.

Hashing can be used with both global and local algorithms. If hashing is used with the global algorithm, it will speed up diff computation significantly, but may reduce the quality of diff. With local algorithm, it improves the quality of the diff.

You must specify a depth at which to use hashing. In hashing, the hash value for every element node is associated with a digest for the entire subtree rooted at that node. The tree is not investigated beyond the specified hash level depth while computing the diff.

The output of the global algorithm with or without hashing meets 'operations-in-docorder' requirement (the nodes must appear in same order as a preorder traversal of the document tree), but the output of the local algorithm does not.

The namespace prefixes [XmlDiff\(\)](#) will use in the xdiff document may be same as those in either the first or second doc, depending on which prefix was seen first while processing. The NS URI will be bound to the prefix in the output appropriately. If this NS does not have a prefix in both docs, a new prefix will be generated and bound to the NS in xdiff doc .

You can read more about [XmlDiff\(\)](#) method in the *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*. Section "XmlDiff Command Line" of the same guide should provide additional resources.

## Syntax

```
xmlnode *XmlDiff(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlerr *err,
    ub4 flags,
    xmldfsrct firstSourceType,
    void *firstSource,
    void *firstSourceExtra,
    xmldfsrct secondSourceType,
    void *secondSource,
    void *secondSourceExtra,
    uword hashLevel,
    oraprop *properties);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
xmlerr	OUT	numeric error code, XMLERR_OK on success
flags	IN	The following options are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ XMLDF_FL_DEFAULTS (=0) chooses defaults</li> <li>■ XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_GLOBAL is the global algorithm</li> <li>■ XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_LOCAL is the local algorithm</li> <li>■ XMLDF_FL_DISABLE_UPDATE indicates a disable update operation, with the global algorithm</li> </ul> By default, global algorithm is used.
firstSourceType	IN	Type of source for first document; if zero, firstSource is assumed to be a DOM doc node.
firstSource	IN	Pointer to the source for the first document
firstSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the source for the first document; used for buffer length pointer
secondSourceType	IN	Type of source for second document; if zero, secondSource is assumed to be a DOM doc node.
secondSource	IN	Pointer to the source for the second document
secondSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the source for the second document; used for buffer length pointer
hashLevel	IN	The depth (counting from 1 for the root) at which to use hashing for sub trees; <=1 means not to use hashing
properties	IN	Used for Output Builder

## Returns

(xmlnode) Doc node for the diff document, or NULL on error

## XmlHash()

Computes a hash value for an XML document or a node in DOM.

If the hash values for two XML subtrees are equal, the corresponding subtrees are equal to a very high probability. Computes the hash value using the Message Digest algorithm 5 (MD5), a widely-used cryptographic hash function with a 128-bit hash value, so there is a very small probability that two different inputs might map to same MD5 digest.

The source can be specified as a file, a URL, and so on. It can also be a Document node in DOM, or any other DOM node, and must be specified using the `inputSource` parameter. If `inputSource` is a non-Document DOM node, `inputSourceExtra` must point to the Document node for the DOM.

You can read more about [XmlHash\(\)](#) method in the *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*.

## Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlHash(
    xmlectx *xctx,
    xmlhasht *digest,
    ub4 flags,
    xmldfsrct inputSourceType,
    void *inputSource,
    void *inputSourceExtra,
    oraprop *properties);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
digest	OUT	The hash value for the XML sub-tree
flags	IN	Not used
inputSourceType	IN	Type of source for the input document; if zero, <code>inputSource</code> is assumed to be a DOM doc node
inputSource	IN	Pointer to the source for the input document
inputSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the source for the input document; if used for a node pointer in a DOM, <code>inputSource</code> must be a document node.
properties	IN	Not used

## Returns

(`xmlerr`) numeric error code, `XMLERR_OK` on success

## XmlPatch()

[XmlPatch\(\)](#) applies `xdiff` schema-conforming changes to an input document. The input document and the `diff` document can be specified either as a DOM tree, file, URI, or buffer.

DOMs are built for both the input and `diff` document if they are not supplied as DOMs.

Data(DOM) encoding of both input and `diff` documents must be the same as the data encoding in `xctx`. The patched DOM will be in the data encoding specified in `xctx`.

Only the simple XPath is supported in the snapshot model. The `XPath` should identify a node with a position predicate in abbreviated syntax, such as `/a[1]/b[2]`. The XPaths generated by [XmlDiff\(\)](#) meet this requirement. Also, 'operations-in-docorder'

condition must be TRUE; the nodes must appear in same order as a preorder traversal of the document tree. Global (with or without hashing) meets this requirement. Local does not.

The programming interface should specify the output model used in the diff doc. The oracle-xmldif should be the first child of the top level xdiff element. It should also use flags to specify if operations are in document order (TRUE or FALSE), and whether the output model is a snapshot or current.

You can read more about [XmlPatch\(\)](#) method in the *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*. Section "XmlPatch Command Line" of the same guide should provide additional resources.

## Syntax

```
xmlDocnode *XmlPatch(
    xmlDocx *xctx,
    xmlDocx *err,
    ub4 flags,
    xmldfsrct inputSourceType,
    void *inputSource,
    void *inputSourceExtra,
    xmldfsrct diffSourceType,
    void *diffSource,
    void *diffSourceExtra,
    oraprop *properties);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
xmlerr	OUT	numeric error code, XMLERR_OK on success
flags	IN	The following option is available: ■ XMLDF_FL_DEFAULTS (=0) chooses defaults
inputSourceType	IN	Type of source for the input document; if zero, inputSource is assumed to be a DOM doc node.
inputSource	IN	Pointer to the source for the input document
inputSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the source for the input document; used for buffer length pointer
diffSourceType	IN	Type of source for diff document; if zero, secondSource is assumed to be a DOM doc node.
diffsSource	IN	Pointer to the source for the diff document
diffSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the source for the diff document; used for buffer length pointer
properties	IN	Not used

## Returns

(xmlDocnode) Doc node for the patched DOM, or NULL on error



# 13

---

## Package XPath APIs for C

XPath methods process XPath related types and interfaces.

This chapter contains this section:

- [XPath Interface](#)

**See Also:**

- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

## XPath Interface

Table 13–1 summarizes the methods available through the XPath interface.

**Table 13–1 Summary of XPath Methods**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlXPathCreateCtx()</a> on page 13-2	Create an XPath context.
<a href="#">XmlXPathDestroyCtx()</a> on page 13-2	Destroy an XPath context.
<a href="#">XmlXPathEval()</a> on page 13-3	Evaluate XPath expression.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean()</a> on page 13-3	Get boolean value of XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectFragment()</a> on page 13-3	Get fragment value of XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode()</a> on page 13-4	Get node from nodeset type XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum()</a> on page 13-4	Get number of nodes in nodeset type XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectNumber()</a> on page 13-5	Get number from XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectString()</a> on page 13-5	Get string from XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectType()</a> on page 13-5	Get XPath object type.
<a href="#">XmlXPathParse()</a> on page 13-6	Parse XPath expression.

### **XmlXPathCreateCtx()**

Create an XPath context

#### **Syntax**

```
xpctx* XmlXPathCreateCtx(
    xmlctx *xsl,
    oratext *baseuri,
    xmlnode *ctxnode,
    ub4 ctxpos,
    ub4 ctxsize);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xsl	IN	XSL stylesheet as xmldoc object
baseuri	IN	base URI used by document, if any
ctxnode	IN	current context position
ctxpos	IN	current context size
ctxsize	IN	current context node

#### **Returns**

(xpctx \*) XPath context or NULL on error

### **XmlXPathDestroyCtx()**

Destroy an XPath context.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlXPathDestroyCtx(
    xpctx *xslxpctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xslxpctx	IN	XPath context object

**XmlXPathEval()**

Evaluate XPath expression.

**Syntax**

```
xpobj *XmlXPathEval(
    xpctx *xctx,
    xpexpr *exprtree,
    xmlerr *err);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XPath context
exprtree	IN	parsed XPath expression tree
err	OUT	error code

**Returns**

(xpobj \*) result XPath object or NULL on error

**XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean()**

Get boolean value of XPath object

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean(
    xpobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object

**Returns**

(boolean) truth value

**See Also:** [XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNumber\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

**XmlXPathGetObjectFragment()**

Get boolean value of XPath object

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlXPathGetObjectFragment(
    xpobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object

**Returns**

(boolean) truth value

**See Also:** [XmlXPathGetObjectType\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNumber\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

**XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode()**

Get node from nodeset-type XPath object

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode *XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode(
    xpobj *obj,
    ub4 i);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object
i	IN	node index in nodeset

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) The object type or values.

**See Also:** [XmlXPathGetObjectType\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectString\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNumber\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

**XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum()**

Get number of nodes in nodeset-type XPath object

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum(
    xpobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object

**Returns**

(ub4) number of nodes in nodeset

**See Also:** [XmlXPathGetObjectType\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectString\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNumber\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

## XmlXPathGetObjectNumber()

Get number from XPath object

### Syntax

```
double XmlXPathGetObjectNumber(
    xpobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object

### Returns

(double) number

**See Also:** [XmlXPathGetObjectType\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectString\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

## XmlXPathGetObjectString()

Get string from XPath object

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlXPathGetObjectString(
    xpobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object

### Returns

(oratext \*) string

**See Also:** [XmlXPathGetObjectType\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNumber\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

## XmlXPathGetType()

Get XPath object type

### Syntax

```
xmlxslobjtype XmlXPathGetType(
    xpobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object

**Returns**

(xmlxslobjtype) type-code for object

**See Also:** [XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectString\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNumber\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

**XmIXPathParse()**

Parse XPath expression.

**Syntax**

```
xpexpr* XmIXPathParse(
    xpctx *xctx,
    oratext *expr,
    xmlerr * err);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XPath context object
expr	IN	XPath expression
err	OUT	error code

**Returns**

(xpexpr \*) XPath expression parse tree or NULL on error

## Package XPointer APIs for C

Package XPointer contains APIs for three interfaces.

This chapter contains these sections:

- [XPointer Interface](#)
- [XPtrLoc Interface](#)
- [XPtrLocSet Interface](#)

**See Also:**

- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

## XPointer Interface

[Table 14–1](#) summarizes the methods available through the XPointer interface.

**Table 14–1 Summary of XPointer Methods; Package XPointer**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlXPointerEval()</a> on page 14-2	Evaluates xpointer string.

### **XmlXPointerEval()**

Parses and evaluates xpointer string and calculates locations in the document.

#### Syntax

```
xmlxptrlocset* XmlXPointerEval(  
    xmldocnode* doc,  
    oratext* xptrstr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
doc	IN	document node of the corresponding DOM tree
xptrstr	IN	xpointer string

#### Returns

(xmlxptrlocset \*) calculated location set

---

## XPtrLoc Interface

[Table 14–2](#) summarizes the methods available through the XPtrLoc interface.

**Table 14–2 Summary of XPtrLoc Methods; Package XPointer**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocGetNode()</a> on page 14-3	Returns Xml node from XPtrLoc.
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocGetPoint()</a> on page 14-3	Returns Xml point from XPtrLoc.
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocGetRange()</a> on page 14-3	Returns Xml range from XPtrLoc.
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocGetType()</a> on page 14-4	Returns type of XPtrLoc.
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocToString()</a> on page 14-4	Returns string for a location.

### **XmlXPtrLocGetNode()**

Returns node from location

#### **Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlXPtrLocGetNode(
    xmlptrloc* loc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
loc	IN	location

#### **Returns**

(xmlnode \*) Node from location

### **XmlXPtrLocGetPoint()**

Returns point from location

#### **Syntax**

```
xmlpoint* XmlXPtrLocGetPoint(
    xmlptrloc* loc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
loc	IN	location

#### **Returns**

(xmlpoint \*) Point from location

### **XmlXPtrLocGetRange()**

Returns range from location.

### Syntax

```
xmlrange* XmlXPtrLocGetRange(  
    xmlxptrloc* loc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
loc	IN	location

### Returns

(xmlrange \*) Range from location

## XmlXPtrLocGetType()

Returns type of location

### Syntax

```
xmlxptrloctype XmlXPtrLocGetType(  
    xmlxptrloc* loc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
loc	IN	location

### Returns

(xmlxptrloctype) Type of location

## XmlXPtrLocToString()

Returns string for a location:

- node name: name of the container node
- names of container nodes: "not a location" otherwise

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlXPtrLocToString(  
    xmlxptrloc* loc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
loc	IN	location

### Returns

(oratext \*) string

---

## XPtrLocSet Interface

[Table 14–3](#) summarizes the methods available through the `XPtrLocSet` interface.

**Table 14–3 Summary of XPtrLocSet Methods; Package XPointer**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocSetFree()</a> on page 14-5	Free a location set
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocSetGetItem()</a> on page 14-5	Returns location with <code>idx</code> position in <code>XPtrLocSet</code>
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocSetGetLength()</a> on page 14-5	Returns length of <code>XPtrLocSet</code> .

### **XmlXPtrLocSetFree()**

It is user's responsibility to call this function on every location set returned by `XPointer` or `XPtrLocSet` interfaces

#### Syntax

```
void XmlXPtrLocSetFree(
    xmlxptrlocset* locset);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>locset</code>	IN	location set

### **XmlXPtrLocSetGetItem()**

Returns location with `idx` position in the location set. First position is 1.

#### Syntax

```
xmlxptrloc* XmlXPtrLocSetGetItem(
    xmlxptrlocset* locset,
    ub4 idx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>locset</code>	IN	location set
<code>idx</code>	IN	location index

#### Returns

`(xmlxptrloc *)` location with the position `idx`

### **XmlXPtrLocSetGetLength()**

Returns the number of locations in the location set

#### Syntax

```
ub4 XmlXPtrLocSetGetLength(
    xmlxptrlocset* locset);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
locset	IN	location set

**Returns**

(ub4) number of nodes in locset

# 15

---

## Package XSLT APIs for C

Package XSLT implements types and methods related to XSL processing.

This chapter contains this section:

- [XSLT Interface](#)

**See Also:**

- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

## XSLT Interface

Table 15–1 summarizes the methods available through the XSLT interface.

**Table 15–1 Summary of XSLT Methods**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlXslCreate()</a> on page 15-2	Create an XSL context.
<a href="#">XmlXslDestroy()</a> on page 15-3	Destroy an XSL context.
<a href="#">XmlXslGetBaseURI()</a> on page 15-3	Get the XSL processor base URI.
<a href="#">XmlXslGetOutput()</a> on page 15-3	Get the XSL result fragment.
<a href="#">XmlXslGetStylesheetDom()</a> on page 15-3	Get the XSL stylesheet document.
<a href="#">XmlXslGetTextParam()</a> on page 15-4	Get the XSL text parameter value.
<a href="#">XmlXslProcess()</a> on page 15-4	Perform XSL processing on an instance document.
<a href="#">XmlXslResetAllParams()</a> on page 15-5	Reset XSL processor parameters.
<a href="#">XmlXslSetOutputDom()</a> on page 15-5	Set the XSL context output DOM.
<a href="#">XmlXslSetOutputEncoding()</a> on page 15-5	Set the XSL context output encoding.
<a href="#">XmlXslSetOutputMethod()</a> on page 15-6	Set the XSL context output method.
<a href="#">XmlXslSetOutputSax()</a> on page 15-6	Set the XSL context output SAX.
<a href="#">XmlXslSetOutputStream()</a> on page 15-6	Set the XSL context output stream.
<a href="#">XmlXslSetTextParam()</a> on page 15-7	Set the XSL context output text parameter.

### **XmlXslCreate()**

Create an XSLT context

#### Syntax

```
xslctx *XmlXslCreate(
    xmlctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *xsl,
    oratext *baseuri,
    xmlerr *err);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object
xsl	IN	XSL stylesheet document object
baseuri	IN	base URI for including and importing documents
err	IN/OUT	returned error code

#### Returns

(xslctx \*) XSLT context

**See Also:** [XmlXslDestroy\(\)](#)

## **XmlXslDestroy()**

Destroy an XSL context

### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslDestroy(
    xslctx *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context

### **Returns**

(xmlerr) error code

**See Also:** [XmlXslCreate\(\)](#)

## **XmlXslGetBaseURI()**

Get the XSL processor base URI

### **Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlXslGetBaseURI(
    xslctx *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object

### **Returns**

(oratext \*) base URI

## **XmlXslGetOutput()**

Get the XSL result fragment

### **Syntax**

```
xmlfragnode *XmlXslGetOutput(
    xslctx *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object

### **Returns**

(xmlfragnode \*) result fragment

## **XmlXslGetStylesheetDom()**

Get the XSL stylesheet document

### Syntax

```
xmlnode *XmlXslGetStylesheetDom(  
    xslctx *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object

### Returns

`(xmlnode *) stylesheet document`

## `XmlXslGetTextParam()`

Get the XSL text parameter value

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlXslGetTextParam(  
    xslctx *ctx,  
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XML context object
name	IN	name of the top-level parameter value

### Returns

`(oratext *) parameter value`

**See Also:** [XmlXslSetTextParam\(\)](#)

## `XmlXslProcess()`

Do XSL processing on an instance document

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlXslProcess(  
    xslctx *ctx,  
    xmlnode *xml,  
    boolean normalize);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object
xml	IN	instance document to process
normalize	IN	if TRUE, force the XSL processor to normalize the document

### Returns

`(xmlerr) error code`

## **XmlXslResetAllParams()**

Reset all the top level parameters added

### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslResetAllParams(
    xslctx *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object

### **Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_SUCC [0] on success.

**See Also:** [XmlXslSetTextParam\(\)](#)

## **XmlXslSetOutputDom()**

Set the xslctx output DOM

### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslSetOutputDom(
    xslctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object
doc	IN	output node

### **Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_SUCC [0] on success.

## **XmlXslSetOutputEncoding()**

Set the xslctx output encoding

### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslSetOutputEncoding(
    xslctx *ctx,
    oratext* encoding);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XML context object
encoding	IN	output encoding

### **Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_SUCC [0] on success.

**XmlXslSetOutputMethod()**

Set the xslctx output method

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslSetOutputMethod(
    xslctx *ctx,
    xmlxslmethod method);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XML context object
encoding	IN	XSL output method

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_SUCC [0] on success.

**XmlXslSetOutputSax()**

Set the xslctx output SAX

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslSetOutputSax(
    xslctx *ctx,
    xmlsaxcb* saxcb,
    void *saxctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object
saxcb	IN	SAX callback object
saxctx	IN	SAX callback context

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_SUCC [0] on success.

**XmlXslSetOutputStream()****Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslSetOutputStream(
    xslctx *ctx,
    xmlostream *stream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object
stream	IN	output stream object

**Returns**

(xmlxsl) error code, XMLXSL\_SUCC [0] on success.

## XmlXslSetTextParam()

Set the xslctx output text parameter.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlXslSetTextParam(  
    xslctx *ctx,  
    oratext *name,  
    oratext *value);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object
name	IN	name of top level parameter
value	IN	value of top level parameter

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_SUCC [0] on success.

**See Also:** [XmlXslGetTextParam\(\)](#)



# 16

---

## Package XSLTVM APIs for C

Package XSLTVM implements the XSL Transformation (XSLT) language as specified in W3C Recommendation 16 November 1999. The XSLTVM package contains two interfaces.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Using XSLTVM](#)
- [XSLTC Interface](#)
- [XSLTVM Interface](#)

**See Also:**

- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

## Using XSLTVM

XSLT Virtual Machine is the software implementation of a "CPU" designed to run compiled XSLT code. A concept of virtual machine assumes a compiler compiling XSLT stylesheets to a sequence of byte codes or machine instructions for the "XSLT CPU". The byte-code program is a platform-independent sequence of 2-byte units. It can be stored, cached and run on different XSLTVM. The XSLTVM uses the bytecode programs to transform instance XML documents. This approach clearly separates compile (design)-time from run-time computations and specifies a uniform way of exchanging data between instructions.

A typical scenario of using the package APIs has the following steps:

1. Create/Use an XML meta context object.

```
xctx = XmlCreate(, . . .);
```

2. Create/Use an XSLT Compiler object.

```
comp = XmlXvmCreateComp(xctx);
```

3. Compile an XSLT stylesheets and cache the result bytecode.

```
code = XmlXvmCompileFile(comp, xslFile, baseuri, flags, );
```

4. Create/Use an XSLTVM object. The explicit stack size setting are needed when XSLTVM terminates with "... Stack Overflow" message or when smaller memory footprints are required (see `XmlXvmCreate`).

```
vm = XmlXvmCreate(xctx, "StringStack", 32, "NodeStack", 24, NULL);
```

5. Set a stylesheet bytecode to the XSLTVM object.

```
len = XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength(code, ); err =  
XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer(vm, code, len);
```

6. Transform an instance XML document.

```
err = XmlXvmTransformFile(vm, xmlFile, baseuri);
```

7. Clean.

```
XmlXvmDestroy(vm);  
XmlXvmDestroyComp(comp);  
XmlDestroy(xctx);
```

## XSLTC Interface

[Table 16–1](#) summarizes the methods available through the XSLTVM Interface.

**Table 16–1 Summary of XSLTC Methods; XSLTVM Package**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlXvmCompileBuffer()</a> on page 16-3	Compile an XSLT stylesheet from buffer into bytecode.
<a href="#">XmlXvmCompileDom()</a> on page 16-4	Compile an XSLT stylesheet from DOM into bytecode.
<a href="#">XmlXvmCompileFile()</a> on page 16-4	Compile an XSLT stylesheet from file into bytecode.
<a href="#">XmlXvmCompileURI()</a> on page 16-5	Compile XSLT stylesheet from URI into byte code.
<a href="#">XmlXvmCompileXPath()</a> on page 16-6	Compile an XPath expression.
<a href="#">XmlXvmCreateComp()</a> on page 16-6	Create an XSLT compiler.
<a href="#">XmlXvmDestroyComp()</a> on page 16-6	Destroy an XSLT compiler object.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength()</a> on page 16-7	Returns the bytecode length.

### XmlXvmCompileBuffer()

Compile an XSLT stylesheet from buffer into bytecode. Compiler flags could be one or more of the following:

- `XMLXVM_DEBUG` forces compiler to include debug information into the bytecode
- `XMLXVM_STRIPSPACE` is equivalent to `<xsl:strip-space elements="*"/>`.

The generated bytecode resides in a compiler buffer which is freed when next stylesheet is compiled or when compiler object is deleted. Hence, if the bytecode is to be reused it should be copied into another location.

#### Syntax

```
ub2 *XmlXvmCompileBuffer(
    xmlxvmcomp *comp,
    oratext *buffer,
    ub4 length,
    oratext *baseURI,
    xmlxvmflag flags,
    xmlerr *error);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
comp	IN	compiler object
buffer	IN	pointer to buffer containing stylesheet document
length	IN	length of the stylesheet document in bytes
baseuri	IN	base URI of the document
flags	IN	flags for the current compilation
error	OUT	returned error code

**Returns**

(ub2 \*) bytecode or NULL on error

**See Also:** [XmlXvmCompileFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmCompileURI\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmCompileDom\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmCompileDom()**

Compile an XSLT stylesheet from DOM into bytecode. Compiler flags could be one or more of the following:

- XMLXVM\_DEBUG forces compiler to include debug information into the bytecode
- XMLXVM\_STRIPSPACE is equivalent to <xsl:strip-space elements="\*"/>.

The generated bytecode resides in a compiler buffer which is freed when next stylesheet is compiled or when compiler object is deleted. Hence, if the bytecode is to be reused it should be copied into another location.

**Syntax**

```
ub2 *XmlXvmCompileDom(
    xmlxvmcomp *comp,
    xmldocnode *root,
    xmlxvmflag flags,
    xmlerr *error);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
comp	IN	compiler object
root	IN	root element of the stylesheet DOM
flags	IN	flags for the current compilation
error	OUT	returned error code

**Returns**

(ub2 \*) bytecode or NULL on error

**See Also:** [XmlXvmCompileFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmCompileBuffer\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmCompileURI\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmCompileFile()**

Compile XSLT stylesheet from file into bytecode. Compiler flags could be one or more of the following:

- XMLXVM\_DEBUG forces compiler to include debug information into the bytecode
- XMLXVM\_STRIPSPACE is equivalent to <xsl:strip-space elements="\*"/>.

The generated bytecode resides in a compiler buffer which is freed when next stylesheet is compiled or when compiler object is deleted. Hence, if the bytecode is to be reused it should be copied into another location.

**Syntax**

```
ub2 *XmlXvmCompileFile(
```

```
xmlxvmcomp *comp,
oratext *path,
oratext *baseURI,
xmlxvmflag flags,
xmlerr *error);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
comp	IN	compiler object
path	IN	path of XSL stylesheet file
baseuri	IN	base URI of the document
flags	IN	flags for the current compilation
error	OUT	returned error code

### Returns

(ub2 \*) bytecode or NULL on error

**See Also:** [XmlXvmCompileURI\(\)](#), [XmlXvmCompileBuffer\(\)](#), [XmlXvmCompileDom\(\)](#)

## XmlXvmCompileURI()

Compile XSLT stylesheet from URI into bytecode. Compiler flags could be one or more of the following:

- XMLXVM\_DEBUG forces compiler to include debug information into the bytecode
- XMLXVM\_STRIPSPACE is equivalent to <xsl:strip-space elements="\*"/>.

The generated bytecode resides in a compiler buffer which is freed when next stylesheet is compiled or when compiler object is deleted. Hence, if the bytecode is to be reused it should be copied into another location.

### Syntax

```
ub2 *XmlXvmCompileURI(
    xmlxvmcomp *comp,
    oratext *uri,
    xmlxvmflag flags,
    xmlerr *error);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
comp	IN	compiler object
uri	IN	URI of the file that contains the XSL stylesheet
flags	IN	flags for the current compilation
error	OUT	returned error code

### Returns

(ub2 \*) bytecode or NULL on error

**See Also:** [XmlXvmCompileFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmCompileBuffer\(\)](#), [XmlXvmCompileDom\(\)](#)

## XmlXvmCompileXPath()

Compiles an XPath expression. The optional `pfxmap` is used to map namespace prefixes to URIs in the XPath expression. It is an array of prefix, URI values, ending in NULL, and so on.

### Syntax

```
ub2 *XmlXvmCompileXPath(
    xmlxvmcomp *comp,
    oratext *xpath,
    oratext **pfxmap,
    xmlerr *error);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
comp	IN	compiler object
xpath	IN	XPath expression
pfxmap	IN	array of prefix-URI mappings
error	OUT	returned error code

### Returns

(ub2 \*) XPath expression bytecode or NULL on error

## XmlXvmCreateComp()

Create an XSLT compiler object. The XSLT compiler is used to compile XSLT stylesheets into bytecode.

### Syntax

```
xmlxvmcomp *XmlXvmCreateComp(
    xmllctx *xctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

### Returns

(xmlxvmcomp \*) XSLT compiler object, or NULL on error

**See Also:** [XmlXvmDestroyComp\(\)](#)

## XmlXvmDestroyComp()

Destroys an XSLT compiler object

### Syntax

```
void XmlXvmDestroyComp(
    xmlxvmcomp *comp);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
comp	IN	XSLT compiler object

**See Also:** [XmlXvmCreateComp\(\)](#)

## **XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength()**

The bytecode length is needed when the bytecode is to be copied or when it is set into XSLTVM.

### **Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength(
    ub2 *bytecode,
    xmlerr *error);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
bytecode	IN	bytecode buffer
error	OUT	returned error code

### **Returns**

(ub4) The bytecode length in bytes.

## XSLTVM Interface

[Table 16–2](#) summarizes the methods available through the XSLTVM Interface.

**Table 16–2 Summary of XSLTVM Methods; Package XSLTVM**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XMLXVM_DEBUG_F()</a> on page 16-9	XMLXSLTVM debug function.
<a href="#">XmlXvmCreate()</a> on page 16-9	Create an XSLT virtual machine.
<a href="#">XmlXvmDestroy()</a> on page 16-10	Destroys an XSLT virtual machine.
<a href="#">XmlXvmEvaluateXPath()</a> on page 16-10	Evaluate already-compiled XPath expression.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean()</a> on page 16-10	Get boolean value of XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode()</a> on page 16-11	Get node from nodeset type XPathobject.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum()</a> on page 16-11	Get number of nodes in nodeset type XPathobject.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetObjectNumber()</a> on page 16-11	Get number from XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetObjectString()</a> on page 16-12	Get string from XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetObjectType()</a> on page 16-12	Get XPath object type.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetOutputDom()</a> on page 16-13	Returns the output DOM.
<a href="#">XmlXvmResetParams()</a> on page 16-13	Resets the stylesheet top level text parameters.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetBaseURI()</a> on page 16-13	Sets the base URI for the XLTVM.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer()</a> on page 16-14	Set the compiled bytecode.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile()</a> on page 16-14	Set the compiled byte code from file.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI()</a> on page 16-14	Set the compiled bytecode.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetDebugFunc()</a> on page 16-15	Set a callback function for debugging.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetOutputDom()</a> on page 16-15	Sets the XSLTVM to output document node.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding()</a> on page 16-16	Sets the encoding for the XSLTVM output.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetOutputSax()</a> on page 16-16	Sets XSLTVM to output SAX.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetOutputStream()</a> on page 16-17	Set the XSLTVM output to a user-defined stream.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetTextParam()</a> on page 16-17	Set the stylesheet top-level text parameter.
<a href="#">XmlXvmTransformBuffer()</a> on page 16-17	Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document in memory.
<a href="#">XmlXvmTransformDom()</a> on page 16-18	Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document as DOM.
<a href="#">XmlXvmTransformFile()</a> on page 16-18	Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document in file.
<a href="#">XmlXvmTransformURI()</a> on page 16-19	Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document from URI.

## XMLXVM\_DEBUG\_F()

Debug callback function for XSLT VM.

### Syntax

```
#define XMLXVM_DEBUG_F(func, line, file, obj, n)
void func(
    ub2 line,
    oratext *file,
    xvmobj *obj,
    ub4 n)
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
line	IN	source stylesheet line number
file	IN	stylesheet filename
obj	IN	current VM object
n	IN	index of current node

**See Also:** [XmlXvmSetDebugFunc\(\)](#)

## XmlXvmCreate()

Create an XSLT virtual machine. Zero or more of the following XSLTVM properties could be set by using this API:

- "VMStack", size sets the size[Kbyte] of the main VM stack; default size is 4K.
- "NodeStack", size sets the size[Kbyte] of the node-stack; default size is 16K.
- "StringStack", size sets the size[Kbyte] of the string-stack; default size is 64K.

If the stack size is not specified the default size is used. The explicit stack size setting is needed when XSLTVM terminates with "Stack Overflow" message or when smaller memory footprints are required.

### Syntax

```
xmlxvm *XmlXvmCreate(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
list	IN	NULL-terminated list of properties to set; can be empty

### Returns

(xmlxvm \*) XSLT virtual machine object, or NULL on error

**See Also:** [XmlXvmDestroy\(\)](#)

## XmlXvmDestroy()

Destroys an XSLT virtual machine

### Syntax

```
void XmlXvmDestroy(
    xmlxvm *vm);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object

**See Also:** [XmlXvmCreate\(\)](#)

## XmlXvmEvaluateXPath()

Evaluate already-compiled XPath expression

### Syntax

```
xvmodj *XmlXvmEvaluateXPath(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    ub2 *bytecode,
    ub4 ctxpos,
    ub4 ctxsize,
    xmlnode *ctxnode);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	XSLTVM object
bytecode	IN	XPath expression bytecode
ctxpos	IN	current context position
ctxsize	IN	current context size
ctxnode	IN	current context node

### Returns

(xvmodj \*) XPath object

## XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean()

Get boolean value of XPath object

### Syntax

```
boolean XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean(
    xvmodj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	object

**Returns**

(boolean) value of an XPath object

**See Also:** [XmlXvmGetObjectType\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNumber\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode()**

Get node from nodeset-type XPath object

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode *XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode(
    xvmobj *obj,
    ub4 i);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	object
i	IN	node index in nodeset

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) The object type or values.

**See Also:** [XmlXvmGetObjectType\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectString\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNumber\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum()**

Get number of nodes in nodeset-type XPath object

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum(
    xvmobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	object

**Returns**

(ub4) number of nodes in nodeset

**See Also:** [XmlXvmGetObjectType\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectString\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNumber\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmGetObjectNumber()**

Get number from XPath object.

**Syntax**

```
double XmlXvmGetObjectNumber(
    xvmobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	object

**Returns**

(double) number

**See Also:** [XmlXvmGetObjectType\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectString\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmGetObjectString()**

Get string from XPath object.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlXvmGetObjectString(
    xvmobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	object

**Returns**

(oratext \*) string

**See Also:** [XmlXvmGetObjectType\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNumber\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmGetObjectType()**

Get XPath object type

**Syntax**

```
xmlxvmbjtype XmlXvmGetObjectType(
    xvmobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	object

**Returns**

(xmlxvmbjtype) type-code for object

**See Also:** [XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectString\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNumber\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

## XmlXvmGetOutputDom()

Returns the root node of the result DOM tree (if any). `XmlXvmSetOutputDom` has to be used before transformation to set the VM to output a DOM tree (the default VM output is a stream).

### Syntax

```
xmlfragnode *XmlXvmGetOutputDom(
    xmlxvm *vm);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object

### Returns

(`xmlfragnode *`) output DOM, or `NULL` in a case of SAX or Stream output.

**See Also:** [XmlXvmSetOutputDom\(\)](#)

## XmlXvmResetParams()

Resets the stylesheet top-level parameters with their default values.

### Syntax

```
void XmlXvmResetParams(
    xmlxvm *vm);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object

## XmlXvmSetBaseURI()

Sets the base URI for the XSLTVM. The baseuri is used by VM to compose the path XML documents to be loaded for transformation using `document` or `XmlXvmTransformFile`.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetBaseURI(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    oratext *baseuri);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
baseuri	IN	VM base URI for reading and writing documents

### Returns

(`xmlerr`) error code.

## XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer()

Set the compiled bytecode from buffer. Any previously set bytecode is replaced. An XML transformation can't be performed if the stylesheet bytecode is not set. The VM doesn't copy the bytecode into internal buffer, hence it shouldn't be freed before VM finishes using it.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    ub2 *buffer,
    size_t buflen);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	XSLT VM context
buffer	IN	user's buffer
buflen	IN	size of buffer, in bytes

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI\(\)](#)

## XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile()

Set the compiled bytecode from file. Any previously set bytecode is replaced. An XML transformation can't be performed if the stylesheet bytecode is not set.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    oratext *path);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	XSLT VM context
path	IN	path of bytecode file

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:** [XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI\(\)](#), [XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer\(\)](#)

## XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI()

Set the compiled bytecode from URI. Any previously set bytecode is replaced. An XML transformation can't be performed if the stylesheet bytecode is not set.

## Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    oratext *uri);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	XSLT VM context
uri	IN	path of bytecode file

## Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] on success

**See Also:** [XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer\(\)](#)

## XmlXvmSetDebugFunc()

The user callback function is invoked by VM every time the execution reaches a new line in the XSLT stylesheet. The VM passes to the user the stylesheet file name, the line number, the current context nodes-set and the current node index in the node-set.  
**IMPORTANT** - the stylesheet has to be compiled with flag XMLXVM\_DEBUG.

## Syntax

```
#define XMLXVM_DEBUG_FUNC(func)
void func (ub2 line, oratext *filename, xvmobj *obj, ub4 n)
xmlerr XmlXvmSetDebugFunc(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    XMLXVM_DEBUG_FUNC(debugcallback));
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	XSLT VM context
func	IN	callback function

## Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] on success

## XmlXvmSetOutputDom()

Sets the XSLTVM to output DOM. If `xmldocnode==NULL`, then the result DOM tree belongs to the VM object and is deleted when a new transformation is performed or when the VM object is deleted. If the result DOM tree is to be used for longer period of time then an `xmldocnode` has to be created and set to the VM object.

## Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetOutputDom(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
doc	IN	empty document

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code

**XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding()**

Sets the encoding for the XSLTVM stream output. If the input (data) encoding is different from the one set by this APIs then encoding conversion is performed. This APIs overrides the encoding set in the XSLT stylesheet (if any).

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    oratext *encoding);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
encoding	IN	output encoding

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code.

**XmlXvmSetOutputSax()**

Set XSLTVM to output SAX. If the SAX callback interface object is provided the VM outputs the result document in a form of SAX events using the user specified callback functions.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetOutputSax(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    xmlsaxcb *saxcb,
    void *saxctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
saxcb	IN	SAX callback object
saxctx	IN	SAX context

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code

## **XmlXvmSetOutputStream()**

Set the XSLTVM output to a user-defined stream. The default XSLTVM output is a stream. This APIs overrides the default stream with user specified APIs for writing.

### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetOutputStream(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    xmlostream *ostream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
ostream	IN	stream object

### **Returns**

(xmlerr) error code.

## **XmlXvmSetTextParam()**

Set the stylesheet top-level text parameter. The parameter value set in the XSLT stylesheet is overwritten. Since the top-level parameters are reset with stylesheet values after each transformation, this APIs has to be called again.

### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetTextParam(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    oratext *name,
    oratext *value);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
name	IN	name of top-level parameter
value	IN	value of top-level parameter

### **Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_SUCC [0] on success.

## **XmlXvmTransformBuffer()**

Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document in memory. The compiled XSLT stylesheet (bytecode) should be set using `XmlXvmSetBytecodeXXX` prior to this call.

### **Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmTransformBuffer(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    oratext *buffer,
    ub4 length,
    oratext *baseURI);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
buffer	IN	NULL-terminated buffer that contains the XML document
length	IN	length of the XML document
baseURI	IN	base URI of XML document

**Returns**`(xmlerr) error code.`

**See Also:** [XmlXvmTransformFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmTransformURI\(\)](#), [XmlXvmTransformDom\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmTransformDom()**

Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document as DOM. The compiled XSLT stylesheet (bytecode) should be set using `XmlXvmSetBytecodeXXX` prior to this call.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmTransformDom(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    xmldocnode *root);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
root	IN	root element of XML document's DOM

**Returns**`(xmlerr) error code.`

**See Also:** [XmlXvmTransformFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmTransformURI\(\)](#), [XmlXvmTransformBuffer\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmTransformFile()**

Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document in file. The compiled XSLT stylesheet (bytecode) should be set using `XmlXvmSetBytecodeXXX` prior to this call.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmTransformFile(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    oratext *path,
    oratext *baseURI);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
path	IN	path of XML document to transform

Parameter	In/Out	Description
baseURI	IN	base URI of XML document

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code

**See Also:** [XmlXvmTransformURI\(\)](#), [XmlXvmTransformBuffer\(\)](#), [XmlXvmTransformDom\(\)](#)

## XmlXvmTransformURI()

Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document from URI. The compiled XSLT stylesheet (bytecode) should be set using `XmlXvmSetBytecodeXXX` prior to this call.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmTransformURI(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    oratext *uri);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
uri	IN	URI of XML document to transform

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code.

**See Also:** [XmlXvmTransformFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmTransformBuffer\(\)](#), [XmlXvmTransformDom\(\)](#)



# Mapping of APIs used before Oracle Database 10g Release 1

This chapter maps the XML C APIs available in Oracle9*i* release to the Unified XML C APIs available in this release of Oracle Database.

The chapter contains these topics:

- [C Package Changes](#)
- [Initializing and Parsing Sequence Changes](#)
- [Datatype Mapping between oraxml and xml Packages](#)
- [Method Mapping between oraxml and xml Packages](#)

**See Also:** Format Models in *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*

## C Package Changes

Pre-existing C APIs were available through the `oraxml` package. It had the following characteristics:

- Specification is limited to a one-to-one mapping between the `xml` context (`xmlctx`) and an `xml` document. Only one document can be accessed by DOM at any one time, however the data of multiple documents can be concurrent.
- The APIs are not always consistent, and don't always follow the declarations of the `xmlctx`.

In contrast, the new unified C APIs solve these problems:

- Multiple independent documents share the `xmlctx`.
- All APIs conform to the declarations of the `xmlctx`.
- Each document can be accessed simultaneously by DOM until explicitly destroyed by an `XmlDestroy()` call.

## Initializing and Parsing Sequence Changes

The initialization and parsing of documents has changed in the Unified C API.

**Example A–1 Initializing and Parsing Sequence for the Pre-Unified C API, One Document at a Time**

The following pseudo-code demonstrates how to initialize and parse documents, one at a time, using the old C APIs. Contrast this with [Example A–2](#).

```
#include <oraxml.h>
uword err;
xmlctx *ctx = xmlinit(&err, options);
for (;;)
{
    err = xmlparse(ctx, URI, options);
    ...
    /* DOM operations */
    ...
    /* recycle memory from document */
    xmlclean(ctx);
}
xmlterm(ctx);
```

**Example A–2 Initializing and Parsing Sequence for the Unified C API, One Document at a Time**

The following pseudo-code demonstrates how to initialize and parse documents, one at a time, using the new C APIs. Contrast this with [Example A–1](#).

```
#include <xml.h>
xmlerr err;
xmldocnode *doc;
xmlctx *xctx = XmlCreate(&err, options, NULL);
for (;;)
{
    doc = XmlNode(xctx, &err, "URI", URI, NULL);
    ...
    /* DOM operations */
    ...
    XmlFreeDocument(xctx, doc);
}
XmlDestroy(xctx);
```

**Example A–3 Initializing and Parsing Sequence for the Pre-Unified C API, Multiple Documents and Simultaneous DOM Access**

The following pseudo-code demonstrates how to initialize and parse multiple documents with simultaneous DOM access using the old C APIs. Contrast this with [Example A–4](#).

```
xmlctx *ctx1 = xmlinitenc(&err, options);
xmlctx *ctx2 = xmlinitenc(&err, options);
err = xmlparse(ctx1, URI_1, options);
err = xmlparse(ctx2, URI_2, options);
...
/* DOM operations for both documents */
...
xmlterm(ctx1);
xmlterm(ctx2);
```

**Example A–4 Initializing and Parsing Sequence for the Unified C API, Multiple Documents and Simultaneous DOM Access**

The following pseudo-code example demonstrates how to initialize and parse multiple documents with simultaneous DOM access using the new C APIs. Contrast this with [Example A–3](#).

```

xmlnode *doc1;
xmlnode *doc2;
xmlctx *xctx = XmlCreate(&err, options, NULL);
doc1 = XmlLoadDom(xctx, &err, "URI", URI_1, NULL);
doc2 = XmlLoadDom(xctx, &err, "URI", URI_2, NULL);
...
/* DOM operations for both documents*/
...
XmlFreeDocument(xctx, doc1);
XmlFreeDocument(xctx, doc2);
...
XmlDestroy(xctx);

```

## Datatype Mapping between oraxml and xml Packages

[Table A–1](#) outlines the changes made to datatypes for the new C API.

**Table A–1 Datatypes Supported by oraxml Package versus xml Package**

oraxml Supported Datatype	xml Supported Datatype
uword	xmlerr
xmlacctype	xmlurlacc
xmllattrnode	xmllattrnode
xmlcdatanode	xmlcdatanode
xmlcommentnode	xmlcommentnode
xmlctx	xmlctx
xmlnode	xmlnode
xmldomimp	Obsolete. Use xmlctx.
xmldtdnode	xmldtdnode
xmlelemnode	xmlelemnode
xmlentnode	xmlentnode
xmlentrefnode	xmlentrefnode
xmlflags	ub4
xmlfragnode	xmlfragnode
xmlihdl	xmlurlhdl
xmlmemcb	Use individual function pointers.
xmlnode	xmlnode
xmlnodes	xmlnodelist, xmlnamedmap
xmlnotenode	xmlnotenode
xmlntype	xmlnodetype
xmlpflags	ub4

**Table A–1 (Cont.) Datatypes Supported by oraxml Package versus xml Package**

<b>oraxml Supported Datatype</b>	<b>xml Supported Datatype</b>
xmlpinode	xmlpinode
xmlsaxcb	xmlsaxcb
xmlstream	xmlstream, xmliostream
xmltextnode	xmltextnode
xpctx	xpctx
xpexpr	xpexpr
xpnset	Obsolete.UseXmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum() and XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode().
xpnsetele	Obsolete.UseXmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum() and XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode().
xpobj	xpobj
xpobjtyp	xmlxslobjtype
xslctx	xslctx
xsloutputmethod	xmlxsloutputmethod

## Method Mapping between oraxml and xml Packages

Table A–2 outlines the changes made to the methods of the new C API.

**Table A–2 Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

<b>Package oraxml Method</b>	<b>Package xml Method(s)</b>
appendChild()	XmlDomAppendChild()
appendData()	XmlDomAppendData()
cloneNode()	XmlDomCloneNode()
createAttribute()	XmlDomCreateAttr()
createAttributeNS()	XmlDomCreateAttrNS()
createCDATASection()	XmlDomCreateCDATA()
createComment()	XmlDomCreateComment()
createDocument()	XmlCreateDocument()
createDocumentFragment()	XmlDomCreateFragment()
createDocumentNS()	XmlCreateDocument()
createDocumentType()	XmlCreateDTD()
createElement()	XmlDomCreateElem()
createElementNS()	XmlDomCreateElemNS()
createEntityReference()	XmlDomCreateEntityRef()
createProcessingInstruction()	XmlDomCreatePI()
createTextNode()	XmlDomCreateText()
deleteData()	XmlDomDeleteData()
freeElements()	XmlDomFreeNodeList()

**Table A–2 (Cont.) Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

Package oraxml Method	Package xml Method(s)
getAttribute()	XmlDomGetAttr()
getAttributeIndex()	XmlDomGetAttrs(), XmlDomGetNodeMapItem()
getAttributeNode()	XmlDomGetAttrNode()
getAttributes()	XmlDomGetAttrs()
getAttrLocal()	XmlDomGetAttrLocal(), XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen()
getAttrName()	XmlDomGetAttrName()
getAttrNamespace()	XmlDomGetAttrURI(), XmlDomGetAttrURILen()
getAttrPrefix()	XmlDomGetAttrPrefix()
getAttrQualifiedName()	XmlDomGetAttrName()
getAttrSpecified()	XmlDomGetAttrSpecified()
getAttrValue()	XmlDomGetAttrValue()
getCharData()	XmlDomGetCharData()
getChildNode()	XmlDomGetChildNode()
getChildNodes()	XmlDomGetChildNodes()
getContentModel()	XmlDomGetContentModel()
getDocType()	XmlDomGetDTD()
getDocTypeEntities()	XmlDomGetDTDEntities()
getDocTypeName()	XmlDomGetDTDName()
getDocTypeNotations()	XmlDomGetDTDNotations()
getDocument()	Obsolete; document returned by XmlLoadDomxxx() calls
getDocumentElement()	XmlDomGetDoctElem()
getElementByID()	XmlDomGetElemByID()
getElementsByTagName()	XmlDomGetElemsByTag()
getElementsByTagNameNS()	XmlDomGetElemsByTag()
getEncoding()	XmlDomGetEncoding()
getEntityNotation()	XmlDomGetEntityNotation()
getEntityPubID()	XmlDomGetEntityPubID()
getEntitySysID()	XmlDomGetEntitySysID()
getFirstChild()	XmlDomGetFirstChild()
getImplementation()	Obsolete; use xmldctx instead of DOMImplementation
getLastChild()	XmlDomGetLastChild()
getNamedItem()	XmlDomGetNamedItem()
getNextSibling()	XmlDomGetNextSibling()
getNodeLocal()	XmlDomGetNodeLocal(), XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen()
getNodeMapLength()	XmlDomGetNodeMapLength()
getNodeName()	XmlDomGetnodeName(), XmlDomGetnodeNameLen()
getNodeNameSpace()	XmlDomGetnodeURI(), XmlDomGetnodeURILen()

**Table A–2 (Cont.) Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

<b>Package oraxml Method</b>	<b>Package xml Method(s)</b>
getNodePrefix()	XmlDomGetNodePrefix()
getNodeQualifiedName()	XmlDomGetNodedName(), XmlDomGetNodedNameLen()
getNodeType()	XmlDomGetNodeType()
getNodeValue()	XmlDomGetnodeValue(), XmlDomGetnodeValueLen()
getNotationPubID()	XmlDomGetNotationPubID()
getNotationSysID()	XmlDomGetNotationSysID()
getOwnerDocument()	XmlDomGetOwnerDocument()
getParentNode()	XmlDomGetParentNode()
getP IData()	XmlDomGetP IData()
getPITarget()	XmlDomGetPITarget()
getPreviousSibling()	XmlDomGetPrevSibling()
getTagName()	XmlDomGetTagName()
hasAttributes()	XmlDomHasAttrs()
hasChildNodes()	XmlDomHasChildNodes()
hasFeature()	XmlHasFeature()
importNode()	XmlDomImportNode()
insertBefore()	XmlDomInsertBefore()
insertData()	XmlDomInsertData()
isSingleChar()	XmlIsSimple()
isStandalone()	XmlDomGetDecl()
isUnicode()	XmlDomIsUnicode()
nodeValid()	XmlDomValidate()
normalize()	XmlDomNormalize()
numAttributes()	XmlDomNumAttrs()
numChildNodes()	XmlDomNumChildNodes()
prefixToURI()	XmlDomPrefixToURI()
printBuffer()	XmlSaveDomBuffer()
printBufferEnc()	XmlSaveDomBuffer()
printCallback()	XmlSaveDomStream()
printCallbackEnc()	XmlSaveDomStream()
printSize()	XmlSaveDomSize()
printSizeEnc()	XmlSaveDomSize()
printStream()	XmlSaveDomStdio()
printStreamEnc()	XmlSaveDomStdio()
removeAttribute()	XmlDomRemoveAttr()
removeAttributeNode()	XmlDomRemoveAttrNode()
removeChild()	XmlDomRemoveChild()

**Table A–2 (Cont.) Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

Package oraxml Method	Package xml Method(s)
removeNamedItem()	XmlDomRemoveNamedItem()
replaceChild()	XmlDomReplaceChild()
replaceData()	XmlDomReplaceData()
saveString2()	XmlDomSaveString2()
saveString()	XmlDomSaveString()
setAttribute()	XmlDomSetAttr()
setAttributeNode()	XmlDomSetAttrNode()
setAttrValue()	XmlDomSetAttrValue()
setCharData()	XmlDomSetCharData()
setNamedItem()	XmlDomSetNamedItem()
setNodeValue()	XmlDomSetNodeValue(), XmlDomSetNodeValueLen()
setP IData()	XmlDomSetP IData()
splitText()	XmlDomSplitText()
substringData()	XmlDomSubstringData()
xmlaccess()	XmlAccess()
xmlinit()	XmlCreate()
xmlinitenc()	XmlCreate()
xmlparse()	XmlLoadDomURI()
xmlparsebuf()	XmlLoadDomBuffer()
xmlparsedtd()	Obsolete; use XML_LOAD_FLAG_DTD_ONLY flag in XmlLoadXXX() calls.
xmlparsefile()	XmlLoadDomFile()
xmlparsestream()	XmlLoadDomStream()
xmlterm()	XmlDestroy()
xpevalxpathexpr()	XmlXPathEval()
xpfrexpathctx()	XmlXPathDeleteCtx()
xpgetbooleanval()	XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean()
xpgetfirstnsetelem()	XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum()
xpgetnextnsetelem()	XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum()
xpgetnsetelemnode()	XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum()
xpgetnsetval()	XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum()
xpgetnumval()	XmlXPathGetObjectNumber()
xpgetrtfragval()	XmlXPathGetObjectFragment()
xpgetstrval()	XmlXPathGetObjectString()
xpgetxpobjtyp()	XmlXPathGetObjectType()
xpmakxpathctx()	XmlXPathCreateCtx()
xpparsexpathexpr()	XmlXPathParse()

**Table A–2 (Cont.) Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

<b>Package oraxml Method</b>	<b>Package xml Method(s)</b>
xslgetbaseuri()	XmlXslGetBaseURI()
xslgetoutputdomctx()	XmlXslGetOutputDom()
xslgetoutputsax()	Unnecessary
xslgetoutputstream()	Unnecessary
xslgetresultdocfrag()	XmlXslGetOutputFragment()
xslgettextparam()	XmlXslGetTextParam()
xslgetxslctx()	Unnecessary
xslinit()	XmlXslCreateCtx()
xslprocess()	XmlXslProcess()
xslprosessex()	XmlXslProcess()
xslprocessxml()	XmlXslProcess()
xslprocessxmldocfrag()	XmlXslProcess()
xslresetallparams()	XmlXslResetAllParams()
xslsetoutputdomctx()	XmlXslSetOutputDom()
xslsetoutputencoding()	XmlXslSetOutputEncoding()
xslsetoutputmethod()	XmlXslSetOutputMethod()
xslsetoutputsax()	XmlXslSetOutputSax()
xslsetoutputsaxctx()	XmlXslSetOutputSax()
xslsetoutputstream()	XmlXslSetOutputStream()
xslsettextparam()	XmlXslSetTextParam()
xslterm()	XmlXslDeleteCtx()

---

---

---

# Index

## C

### C package methods

  XML\_ACCESS\_CLOSE\_F in package  
    Callback, 2-2  
  XML\_ACCESS\_OPEN\_F in package Callback, 2-2  
  XML\_ACCESS\_READ\_F in package Callback, 2-3  
  XML\_ALLOC\_F in package Callback, 2-3  
  XML\_ERRMSG\_F in package Callback, 2-4  
  XML\_FREE\_F in package Callback, 2-4  
  XML\_STREAM\_CLOSE\_F in package  
    Callback, 2-5  
  XML\_STREAM\_OPEN\_F in package  
    Callback, 2-5  
  XML\_STREAM\_READ\_F in package  
    Callback, 2-6  
  XML\_STREAM\_WRITE\_F in package  
    Callback, 2-6  
XmlAccess in package XML, 11-2  
XmlCreate in package XML, 11-3  
XmlCreateDocument in package XML, 11-5  
XmlCreateDTD in package XML, 11-5  
XmlDestroy in package XML, 11-6  
XmlDiff in package XML, 11-6  
XmlDiff in package XmlDiff, 12-2  
XMLDOM\_ACCEPT\_NODE\_F in package  
  Traversal, 10-4  
XmlDomAppendChild in package DOM, 3-55  
XmlDomAppendData in package DOM, 3-11  
XmlDomCleanNode in package DOM, 3-55  
XmlDomCloneNode in package DOM, 3-55  
XmlDomCreateAttr in package DOM, 3-17  
XmlDomCreateAttrNS in package DOM, 3-17  
XmlDomCreateCDATA in package DOM, 3-18  
XmlDomCreateComment in package DOM, 3-19  
XmlDomCreateElem in package DOM, 3-19  
XmlDomCreateElemNS in package DOM, 3-20  
XmlDomCreateEntityRef in package DOM, 3-21  
XmlDomCreateFragment in package DOM, 3-21  
XmlDomCreateNodeIter in package  
  Traversal, 10-2  
XmlDomCreatePI in package DOM, 3-22  
XmlDomCreateRange in package Range, 6-2  
XmlDomCreateText in package DOM, 3-22  
XmlDomCreateTreeWalker in package  
  Traversal, 10-3

XmlDomDeleteData in package DOM, 3-12  
XmlDomFreeNode in package DOM, 3-56  
XmlDomFreeNodeList in package DOM, 3-81  
XmlDomFreeString in package DOM, 3-23  
XmlDomGetAttr in package DOM, 3-36  
XmlDomGetAttrLocal in package DOM, 3-2  
XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen in package DOM, 3-3  
XmlDomGetAttrName in package DOM, 3-3  
XmlDomGetAttrNameLen in package DOM, 3-4  
XmlDomGetAttrNode in package DOM, 3-37  
XmlDomGetAttrNodeNS in package DOM, 3-38  
XmlDomGetAttrNS in package DOM, 3-37  
XmlDomGetAttrPrefix in package DOM, 3-5  
XmlDomGetAttrs in package DOM, 3-56  
XmlDomGetAttrsSpecified in package DOM, 3-5  
XmlDomGetAttrURI in package DOM, 3-6  
XmlDomGetAttrURILen in package DOM, 3-6  
XmlDomGetAttrValue in package DOM, 3-7  
XmlDomGetAttrValueLen in package DOM, 3-7  
XmlDomGetAttrValueStream in package  
  DOM, 3-8  
XmlDomGetBaseURI in package DOM, 3-23  
XmlDomGetCharData in package DOM, 3-12  
XmlDomGetCharDataLength in package  
  DOM, 3-13  
XmlDomGetchildNodes in package DOM, 3-57  
XmlDomGetChildrenByTag in package  
  DOM, 3-38  
XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS in package  
  DOM, 3-39  
XmlDomGetDecl in package DOM, 3-24  
XmlDomGetDefaultNS in package DOM, 3-57  
XmlDomGetDocElem in package DOM, 3-25  
XmlDomGetDocElemByID in package  
  DOM, 3-25  
XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag in package  
  DOM, 3-26  
XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS in package  
  DOM, 3-27  
XmlDomGetDTD in package DOM, 3-24  
XmlDomGetDTDEntities in package DOM, 3-33  
XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset in package  
  DOM, 3-33  
XmlDomGetDTDName in package DOM, 3-34  
XmlDomGetDTDNotations in package  
  DOM, 3-34

`XmldomGetDtdPubID` in package DOM, 3-35  
`XmldomGetDtdSysID` in package DOM, 3-35  
`XmldomGetElemsByTag` in package DOM, 3-39  
`XmldomGetElemsByTagNS` in package DOM, 3-40  
`XmldomGetEntityNotation` in package DOM, 3-46  
`XmldomGetEntityPubID` in package DOM, 3-46  
`XmldomGetEntitySysID` in package DOM, 3-47  
`XmldomGetEntityType` in package DOM, 3-47  
`XmldomGetFirstChild` in package DOM, 3-58  
`XmldomGetFirstPfnsPair` in package DOM, 3-58  
`XmldomGetLastChild` in package DOM, 3-59  
`XmldomGetLastError` in package DOM, 3-27  
`XmldomGetNamedItem` in package DOM, 3-48  
`XmldomGetNamedItemNS` in package DOM, 3-49  
`XmldomGetNextPfnsPair` in package DOM, 3-59  
`XmldomGetNextSibling` in package DOM, 3-60  
`XmldomGetNodeListItem` in package DOM, 3-81  
`XmldomGetNodeListLength` in package DOM, 3-82  
`XmldomGetNodeLocal` in package DOM, 3-60  
`XmldomGetNodeLocalLen` in package DOM, 3-60  
`XmldomGetNodeMapItem` in package DOM, 3-49  
`XmldomGetNodeMapLength` in package DOM, 3-50  
`XmldomGetnodeName` in package DOM, 3-61  
`XmldomGetnodeNameLen` in package DOM, 3-62  
`XmldomGetNodePrefix` in package DOM, 3-63  
`XmldomGetNodeType` in package DOM, 3-63  
`XmldomGetNodeURI` in package DOM, 3-64  
`XmldomGetNodeURILen` in package DOM, 3-64  
`XmldomGetnodeValue` in package DOM, 3-65  
`XmldomGetnodeValueLen` in package DOM, 3-66  
`XmldomGetnodeValueStream` in package DOM, 3-66  
`XmldomGetNotationPubID` in package DOM, 3-83  
`XmldomGetNotationSysID` in package DOM, 3-83  
`XmldomGetOwnerDocument` in package DOM, 3-67  
`XmldomGetOwnerElem` in package DOM, 3-9  
`XmldomGetParentNode` in package DOM, 3-67  
`XmldomGetPidata` in package DOM, 3-84  
`XmldomGetPitTarget` in package DOM, 3-84  
`XmldomGetPrevSibling` in package DOM, 3-68  
`XmldomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream` in package DOM, 3-68  
`XmldomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream` in package DOM, 3-68  
`XmldomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream` in package DOM, 3-69  
`XmldomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream` in package DOM, 3-69  
`XmldomGetSchema` in package DOM, 3-28  
`XmldomGetSourceEntity` in package DOM, 3-70  
`XmldomGetSourceLine` in package DOM, 3-70  
`XmldomGetSourceLocation` in package DOM, 3-70  
`XmldomGetTag` in package DOM, 3-41  
`XmldomHasAttr` in package DOM, 3-41  
`XmldomHasAttrNS` in package DOM, 3-41  
`XmldomHasAttrs` in package DOM, 3-71  
`XmldomHasChildNodes` in package DOM, 3-71  
`XmldomImportNode` in package DOM, 3-28  
`XmldomInsertBefore` in package DOM, 3-71  
`XmldomInsertData` in package DOM, 3-13  
`XmldomIsSchemaBased` in package DOM, 3-29  
`XmldomIterDetach` in package Traversal, 10-5  
`XmldomIterNextNode` in package Traversal, 10-5  
`XmldomIterPrevNode` in package Traversal, 10-6  
`XmldomNormalize` in package DOM, 3-72  
`XmldomNumAttrs` in package DOM, 3-72  
`XmldomNumChildNodes` in package DOM, 3-73  
`XmldomPrefixToURI` in package DOM, 3-73  
`XmldomRangeClone` in package Range, 6-3  
`XmldomRangeCloneContents` in package Range, 6-4  
`XmldomRangeCollapse` in package Range, 6-4  
`XmldomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints` in package Range, 6-5  
`XmldomRangeDeleteContents` in package Range, 6-5  
`XmldomRangeDetach` in package Range, 6-5  
`XmldomRangeExtractContents` in package Range, 6-6  
`XmldomRangeGetCollapsed` in package Range, 6-6  
`XmldomRangeGetCommonAncestor` in package Range, 6-7  
`XmldomRangeGetDetached` in package Range, 6-7  
`XmldomRangeGetEndContainer` in package Range, 6-7  
`XmldomRangeGetEndOffset` in package Range, 6-8  
`XmldomRangeGetStartContainer` in package Range, 6-8  
`XmldomRangeGetStartOffset` in package Range, 6-9  
`XmldomRangeIsConsistent` in package Range, 6-9  
`XmldomRangeSelectNode` in package Range, 6-9  
`XmldomRangeSelectNodeContents` in package Range, 6-10  
`XmldomRangeSetEnd` in package Range, 6-10  
`XmldomRangeSetEndBefore` in package Range, 6-11  
`XmldomRangeSetStart` in package Range, 6-11  
`XmldomRangeSetStartAfter` in package Range, 6-12  
`XmldomRangeSetStartBefore` in package Range, 6-12

**XmlDomRemoveAttr** in package DOM, 3-42  
**XmlDomRemoveAttrNode** in package  
 DOM, 3-43  
**XmlDomRemoveAttrNS** in package DOM, 3-42  
**XmlDomRemoveChild** in package DOM, 3-74  
**XmlDomRemoveNamedItem** in package  
 DOM, 3-50  
**XmlDomRemoveNamedItemNS** in package  
 DOM, 3-51  
**XmlDomRenameNode** in package DOM, 3-74  
**XmlDomRenameNodeNS** in package DOM, 3-74  
**XmlDomReplaceChild** in package DOM, 3-75  
**XmlDomReplaceData** in package DOM, 3-14  
**XmlDomSaveString** in package DOM, 3-29  
**XmlDomSaveString2** in package DOM, 3-30  
**XmlDomSetAttr** in package DOM, 3-43  
**XmlDomSetAttrNode** in package DOM, 3-44  
**XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS** in package DOM, 3-45  
**XmlDomSetAttrNS** in package DOM, 3-44  
**XmlDomSetAttrValue** in package DOM, 3-9  
**XmlDomSetAttrValueStream** in package  
 DOM, 3-9  
**XmlDomSetBaseURI** in package DOM, 3-30  
**XmlDomSetCharData** in package DOM, 3-14  
**XmlDomSetDefaultNS** in package DOM, 3-76  
**XmlDomSetDocOrder** in package DOM, 3-31  
**XmlDomSetDTD** in package DOM, 3-31  
**XmlDomSetLastError** in package DOM, 3-32  
**XmlDomSetNamedItem** in package DOM, 3-51  
**XmlDomSetNamedItemNS** in package  
 DOM, 3-52  
**XmlDomSetNodePrefix** in package DOM, 3-76  
**XmlDomSetnodeValue** in package DOM, 3-76  
**XmlDomSetnodeValueLen** in package  
 DOM, 3-77  
**XmlDomSetnodeValueStream** in package  
 DOM, 3-77  
**XmlDomSetPIData** in package DOM, 3-85  
**XmlDomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream** in package  
 DOM, 3-78  
**XmlDomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream** in  
 package DOM, 3-78  
**XmlDomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream** in package  
 DOM, 3-79  
**XmlDomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream** in  
 package DOM, 3-79  
**XmlDomSplitText** in package DOM, 3-86  
**XmlDomSubstringData** in package DOM, 3-15  
**XmlDomSync** in package DOM, 3-32  
**XmlDomValidate** in package DOM, 3-79  
**XmlDomWalkerFirstChild** in package  
 Traversal, 10-7  
**XmlDomWalkerGetCurrentNode** in package  
 Traversal, 10-7  
**XmlDomWalkerGetRoot** in package  
 Traversal, 10-8  
**XmlDomWalkerLastChild** in package  
 Traversal, 10-8  
**XmlDomWalkerNextNode** in package  
 Traversal, 10-9  
**XmlDomWalkerNextSibling** in package  
 Traversal, 10-9  
**XmlDomWalkerParentNode** in package  
 Traversal, 10-10  
**XmlDomWalkerPrevNode** in package  
 Traversal, 10-10  
**XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling** in package  
 Traversal, 10-11  
**XmlDomWalkerSetCurrentNode** in package  
 Traversal, 10-11  
**XmlDomWalkerSetRoot** in package  
 Traversal, 10-12  
**XmlEvCleanPPCtxt** in package Event, 4-5  
**XmlEvCreatePPCtxt** in package Event, 4-6  
**XmlEvCreateSVCtx** in package Event, 4-7  
**XmlEvDestroyPPCtxt** in package Event, 4-8  
**XmlEvDestroySVCtx** in package Event, 4-8  
**XmlEvGetAttrCount** in package Event, 4-9  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody** in package Event, 4-9  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0** in package Event, 4-9  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount** in package Event, 4-10  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName** in package  
 Event, 4-10  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName0** in package  
 Event, 4-10  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName** in package  
 Event, 4-11  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0** in package  
 Event, 4-11  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclName** in package Event, 4-11  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclName0** in package Event, 4-12  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix** in package Event, 4-12  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0** in package Event, 4-13  
**XmlEvGetAttrID** in package Event, 4-13  
**XmlEvGetAttrLocalName** in package Event, 4-13  
**XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0** in package  
 Event, 4-14  
**XmlEvGetAttrName** in package Event, 4-14  
**XmlEvGetAttrName0** in package Event, 4-14  
**XmlEvGetAttrPrefix** in package Event, 4-15  
**XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0** in package Event, 4-15  
**XmlEvGetAttrURI** in package Event, 4-16  
**XmlEvGetAttrURI0** in package Event, 4-16  
**XmlEvGetAttrUriID** in package Event, 4-16  
**XmlEvGetAttrValue** in package Event, 4-17  
**XmlEvGetAttrValue0** in package Event, 4-17  
**XmlEvGetElDeclContent** in package Event, 4-17  
**XmlEvGetElDeclContent0** in package Event, 4-18  
**XmlEvGetEncoding** in package Event, 4-18  
**XmlEvGetError** in package Event, 4-18  
**XmlEvGetLocalName** in package Event, 4-20  
**XmlEvGetLocalName0** in package Event, 4-20  
**XmlEvGetLocation** in package Event, 4-21  
**XmlEvGetName** in package Event, 4-19  
**XmlEvGetName0** in package Event, 4-19  
**XmlEvGetPEisGen** in package Event, 4-22  
**XmlEvGetPERepl** in package Event, 4-23  
**XmlEvGetPERepl0** in package Event, 4-23  
**XmlEvGetPIData** in package Event, 4-21  
**XmlEvGetPIData0** in package Event, 4-21

**XmlEvGetPITarget** in package Event, 4-22  
**XmlEvGetPITarget0** in package Event, 4-22  
**XmlEvGetPrefix** in package Event, 4-23  
**XmlEvGetPrefix0** in package Event, 4-24  
**XmlEvGetPubId** in package Event, 4-24  
**XmlEvGetPubId0** in package Event, 4-25  
**XmlEvGetSysId** in package Event, 4-25  
**XmlEvGetSysId0** in package Event, 4-25  
**XmlEvGetTagID** in package Event, 4-26  
**XmlEvGetTagUriID** in package Event, 4-26  
**XmlEvGetText** in package Event, 4-26  
**XmlEvGetText0** in package Event, 4-27  
**XmlEvGetUENdata** in package Event, 4-28  
**XmlEvGetUENdata0** in package Event, 4-28  
**XmlEvGetURI** in package Event, 4-28  
**XmlEvGetURI0** in package Event, 4-29  
**XmlEvGetVersion** in package Event, 4-29  
**XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified** in package Event, 4-29  
**XmlEvIsStandalone** in package Event, 4-30  
**XmlEvLoadPPDoc** in package Event, 4-31  
**XmlEvNamespaceAttr** in package Event, 4-30  
**XmlEvNext** in package Event, 4-30  
**XmlEvNextTag** in package Event, 4-31  
**XmlEvSchemaValidate** in package Event, 4-31  
**XmlFreeDocument** in package XML, 11-7  
**XmlGetEncoding** in package XML, 11-8  
**XmlHasFeature** in package XML, 11-8  
**XmlHash** in package XmlDiff, 12-3  
**XmlIsSimple** in package XML, 11-9  
**XmlIsUnicode** in package XML, 11-9  
**XmlLoadDom** in package XML, 11-9  
**XmlLoadSax** in package XML, 11-11  
**XmlLoadSaxVA** in package XML, 11-11  
**XmlPatch** in package XmlDiff, 12-4  
**XmlSaveDom** in package XML, 11-12  
**XmlSaxAttributeDecl** in package SAX, 7-2  
**XmlSaxCDATA** in package SAX, 7-3  
**XmlSaxCharacters** in package SAX, 7-3  
**XmlSaxComment** in package SAX, 7-4  
**XmlSaxElementDecl** in package SAX, 7-4  
**XmlSaxEndDocument** in package SAX, 7-5  
**XmlSaxEndElement** in package SAX, 7-5  
**XmlSaxNotationDecl** in package SAX, 7-5  
**XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl** in package SAX, 7-6  
**XmlSaxPI** in package SAX, 7-6  
**XmlSaxStartDocument** in package SAX, 7-7  
**XmlSaxStartElement** in package SAX, 7-7  
**XmlSaxStartElementNS** in package SAX, 7-8  
**XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl** in package SAX, 7-8  
**XmlSaxWhitespace** in package SAX, 7-9  
**XmlSaxXmlDecl** in package SAX, 7-9  
**XmlSchemaClean** in package Schema, 8-2  
**XmlSchemaCreate** in package Schema, 8-2  
**XmlSchemaDestroy** in package Schema, 8-3  
**XmlSchemaErrorWhere** in package Schema, 8-3  
**XmlSchemaLoad** in package Schema, 8-4  
**XmlSchemaLoadedList** in package Schema, 8-4  
**XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler** in package Schema, 8-5  
**XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions** in package Schema, 8-5  
**XmlSchemaTargetNamespace** in package Schema, 8-6  
**XmlSchemaUnload** in package Schema, 8-6  
**XmlSchemaValidate** in package Schema, 8-7  
**XmlSchemaVersion** in package Schema, 8-7  
**XmlSoapAddBodyElement** in package SOAP, 9-3  
**XmlSoapAddFaultReason** in package SOAP, 9-3  
**XmlSoapAddFaultSubDetail** in package SOAP, 9-4  
**XmlSoapAddHeaderElement** in package SOAP, 9-4  
**XmlSoapCall** in package SOAP, 9-5  
**XmlSoapCreateConnection** in package SOAP, 9-5  
**XmlSoapCreateCtx** in package SOAP, 9-6  
**XmlSoapCreateMsg** in package SOAP, 9-7  
**XmlSoapDestroyConnection** in package SOAP, 9-8  
**XmlSoapDestroyCtx** in package SOAP, 9-8  
**XmlSoapDestroyMsg** in package SOAP, 9-8  
**XmlSoapError** in package SOAP, 9-9  
**XmlSoapGetBody** in package SOAP, 9-9  
**XmlSoapGetBodyElement** in package SOAP, 9-10  
**XmlSoapGetEnvelope** in package SOAP, 9-10  
**XmlSoapGetFault** in package SOAP, 9-11  
**XmlSoapGetHeader** in package SOAP, 9-11  
**XmlSoapGetHeaderElement** in package SOAP, 9-12  
**XmlSoapGetMustUnderstand** in package SOAP, 9-12  
**XmlSoapGetReasonLang** in package SOAP, 9-13  
**XmlSoapGetReasonNum** in package SOAP, 9-13  
**XmlSoapGetRelay** in package SOAP, 9-14  
**XmlSoapGetRole** in package SOAP, 9-14  
**XmlSoapHasFault** in package SOAP, 9-15  
**XmlSoapSetFault** in package SOAP, 9-15  
**XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand** in package SOAP, 9-16  
**XmlSoapSetRelay** in package SOAP, 9-16  
**XmlSoapSetRole** in package SOAP, 9-17  
**XmlVersion** in package XML, 11-13  
**XmlXPathCreateCtx** in package XPath, 13-2  
**XmlXPathDestroyCtx** in package XPath, 13-2  
**XmlXPathEval** in package XPath, 13-3  
**XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean** in package XPath, 13-3  
**XmlXPathGetObjectFragment** in package XPath, 13-3  
**XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode** in package XPath, 13-4  
**XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum** in package XPath, 13-4  
**XmlXPathGetObjectNumber** in package XPath, 13-5  
**XmlXPathGetObjectString** in package XPath, 13-5  
**XmlXPathGetObjectType** in package XPath, 13-5  
**XmlXPathParse** in package XPath, 13-6  
**XmlXPointerEval** in package XPointer, 14-2  
**XmlXPtrLocGetNode** in package XPointer, 14-3

XmlXPtrLocGetPoint in package XPointer, 14-3  
 XmlXPtrLocGetRange in package XPointer, 14-3  
 XmlXPtrLocGetType in package XPointer, 14-4  
 XmlXPtrLocSetFree in package XPointer, 14-5  
 XmlXPtrLocSetGetItem in package XPointer, 14-5  
 XmlXPtrLocSetGetLength in package  
     XPointer, 14-5  
 XmlXPtrLocToString in package XPointer, 14-4  
 XmlXslCreate in package XSLT, 15-2  
 XmlXslDestroy in package XSLT, 15-3  
 XmlXslGetBaseURI in package XSLT, 15-3  
 XmlXslGetOutput in package XSLT, 15-3  
 XmlXslGetStylesheetDom in package XSLT, 15-3  
 XmlXslGetTextParam in package XSLT, 15-4  
 XmlXslProcess in package XSLT, 15-4  
 XmlXslResetAllParams in package XSLT, 15-5  
 XmlXslSetOutputDom in package XSLT, 15-5  
 XmlXslSetOutputEncoding in package  
     XSLT, 15-5  
 XmlXslSetOutputMethod in package XSLT, 15-6  
 XmlXslSetOutputSax in package XSLT, 15-6  
 XmlXslSetOutputStream in package XSLT, 15-6  
 XmlXslSetTextParam in package XSLT, 15-7  
 XMLXVM\_DEBUG\_F in package XSLTVM, 16-9  
 XmlXvmCompileBuffer in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-3  
 XmlXvmCompileDom in package XSLTVM, 16-4  
 XmlXvmCompileFile in package XSLTVM, 16-4  
 XmlXvmCompileURI in package XSLTVM, 16-5  
 XmlXvmCompileXPath in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-6  
 XmlXvmCreate in package XSLTVM, 16-9  
 XmlXvmCreateComp in package XSLTVM, 16-6  
 XmlXvmDestroy in package XSLTVM, 16-10  
 XmlXvmDestroyComp in package XSLTVM, 16-6  
 XmlXvmEvaluateXPath in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-10  
 XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-7  
 XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-10  
 XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-11  
 XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-11  
 XmlXvmGetObjectNumber in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-11  
 XmlXvmGetObjectString in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-12  
 XmlXvmGetObjectType in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-12  
 XmlXvmGetOutputDom in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-13  
 XmlXvmResetParams in package XSLTVM, 16-13  
 XmlXvmSetBaseURI in package XSLTVM, 16-13  
 XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-14  
 XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-14  
 XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI in package

    XSLTVM, 16-14  
 XmlXvmSetDebugFunc in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-15  
 XmlXvmSetOutputDom in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-15  
 XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-16  
 XmlXvmSetOutputSax in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-16  
 XmlXvmSetOutputStream in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-17  
 XmlXvmSetTextParam in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-17  
 XmlXvmTransformBuffer in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-17  
 XmlXvmTransformDom in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-18  
 XmlXvmTransformFile in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-18  
 XmlXvmTransformURI in package  
     XSLTVM, 16-19

## C packages

Callback, 2-1  
 DOM, 3-1  
 Event, 4-1  
 Range, 6-1  
 SAX, 7-1  
 Schema, 8-1  
 SOAP, 9-1  
 Traversal, 10-1  
 XML, 11-1  
 XmlDiff, 12-1  
 XPath, 13-1  
 XPointer, 14-1  
 XSLT, 15-1  
 XSLTVM, 16-1

Callback package for C, 2-1

---

## D

DOM package for C, 3-1

---

## E

Event package for C, 4-1

---

## M

### methods

XML\_ACCESS\_CLOSE\_F in package Callback for  
     C, 2-2  
 XML\_ACCESS\_OPEN\_F in package Callback for  
     C, 2-2  
 XML\_ACCESS\_READ\_F in package Callback for  
     C, 2-3  
 XML\_ALLOC\_F in package Callback for C, 2-3  
 XML\_ERRMSG\_F in package Callback for C, 2-4  
 XML\_FREE\_F in package Callback for C, 2-4  
 XML\_STREAM\_CLOSE\_F in package Callback for  
     C, 2-5  
 XML\_STREAM\_OPEN\_F in package Callback for

C, 2-5  
**XML\_STREAM\_READ\_F** in package Callback for C, 2-6  
**XML\_STREAM\_WRITE\_F** in package Callback for C, 2-6  
**XmAccess** in package XML for C, 11-2  
**XmCreate** in package XML for C, 11-3  
**XmCreateDocument** in package XML for C, 11-5  
**XmCreateDTD** in package XML for C, 11-5  
**XmDestroy** in package XML for C, 11-6  
**XmDiff** in package XML for C, 11-6  
**XmDiff** in package XmDiff for C, 12-2  
**XMDOM\_ACCEPT\_NODE\_F** in package Traversal for C, 10-4  
**XmDomAppendChild** in package DOM for C, 3-55  
**XmDomAppendData** in package DOM for C, 3-11  
**XmDomCleanNode** in package DOM for C, 3-55  
**XmDomCloneNode** in package DOM for C, 3-55  
**XmDomCreateAttr** in package DOM for C, 3-17  
**XmDomCreateAttrNS** in package DOM for C, 3-17  
**XmDomCreateCDATA** in package DOM for C, 3-18  
**XmDomCreateComment** in package DOM for C, 3-19  
**XmDomCreateElem** in package DOM for C, 3-19  
**XmDomCreateElemNS** in package DOM for C, 3-20  
**XmDomCreateEntityRef** in package DOM for C, 3-21  
**XmDomCreateFragment** in package DOM for C, 3-21  
**XmDomCreateNodeIter** in package Traversal for C, 10-2  
**XmDomCreatePI** in package DOM for C, 3-22  
**XmDomCreateRange** in package Range for C, 6-2  
**XmDomCreateText** in package DOM for C, 3-22  
**XmDomCreateTreeWalker** in package Traversal for C, 10-3  
**XmDomDeleteData** in package DOM for C, 3-12  
**XmDomFreeNode** in package DOM for C, 3-56  
**XmDomFreeNodeList** in package DOM for C, 3-81  
**XmDomFreeString** in package DOM for C, 3-23  
**XmDomGetAttr** in package DOM for C, 3-36  
**XmDomGetAttrLocal** in package DOM for C, 3-2  
**XmDomGetAttrLocalLen** in package DOM for C, 3-3  
**XmDomGetAttrName** in package DOM for C, 3-3  
**XmDomGetAttrNameLen** in package DOM for C, 3-4  
**XmDomGetAttrNode** in package DOM for C, 3-37  
**XmDomGetAttrNodeNS** in package DOM for C, 3-38  
**XmDomGetAttrNS** in package DOM for C, 3-37  
**XmDomGetAttrPrefix** in package DOM for C, 3-5  
**XmDomGetAttrs** in package DOM for C, 3-56  
**XmDomGetAttrSpecified** in package DOM for C, 3-5  
**XmDomGetAttrURI** in package DOM for C, 3-6  
**XmDomGetAttrURILen** in package DOM for C, 3-6  
**XmDomGetAttrValue** in package DOM for C, 3-7  
**XmDomGetAttrValueLen** in package DOM for C, 3-7  
**XmDomGetAttrValueStream** in package DOM for C, 3-8  
**XmDomGetBaseURI** in package DOM for C, 3-23  
**XmDomGetCharData** in package DOM for C, 3-12  
**XmDomGetCharDataLength** in package DOM for C, 3-13  
**XmDomGetChildNodes** in package DOM for C, 3-57  
**XmDomGetChildrenByTag** in package DOM for C, 3-38  
**XmDomGetChildrenByTagNS** in package DOM for C, 3-39  
**XmDomGetDecl** in package DOM for C, 3-24  
**XmDomGetDefaultNS** in package DOM for C, 3-57  
**XmDomGetDocElem** in package DOM for C, 3-25  
**XmDomGetDocElemByID** in package DOM for C, 3-25  
**XmDomGetDocElemsByTag** in package DOM for C, 3-26  
**XmDomGetDocElemsByTagNS** in package DOM for C, 3-27  
**XmDomGetDTD** in package DOM for C, 3-24  
**XmDomGetDTDEntities** in package DOM for C, 3-33  
**XmDomGetDTDInternalSubset** in package DOM for C, 3-33  
**XmDomGetDTDName** in package DOM for C, 3-34  
**XmDomGetDTDNotations** in package DOM for C, 3-34  
**XmDomGetDTDPubID** in package DOM for C, 3-35  
**XmDomGetDTDSysID** in package DOM for C, 3-35  
**XmDomGetElemsByTag** in package DOM for C, 3-39  
**XmDomGetElemsByTagNS** in package DOM for C, 3-40  
**XmDomGetEntityNotation** in package DOM for C, 3-46  
**XmDomGetEntityPubID** in package DOM for C, 3-46  
**XmDomGetEntitySysID** in package DOM for C, 3-47

**XmDomGetEntityType** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-47  
**XmDomGetFirstChild** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-58  
**XmDomGetFirstPfnsPair** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-58  
**XmDomGetLastChild** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-59  
**XmDomGetLastError** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-27  
**XmDomGetNamedItem** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-48  
**XmDomGetNamedItemNS** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-49  
**XmDomGetNextPfnsPair** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-59  
**XmDomGetNextSibling** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-60  
**XmDomGetNodeListItem** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-81  
**XmDomGetNodeListLength** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-82  
**XmDomGetNodeLocal** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-60  
**XmDomGetNodeLocalLen** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-60  
**XmDomGetNodeMapItem** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-49  
**XmDomGetNodeMapLength** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-50  
**XmDomGetnodeName** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-61  
**XmDomGetnodeNameLen** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-62  
**XmDomGetNodePrefix** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-63  
**XmDomGetNodeType** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-63  
**XmDomGetNodeURI** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-64  
**XmDomGetNodeURILen** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-64  
**XmDomGetnodeValue** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-65  
**XmDomGetnodeValueLen** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-66  
**XmDomGetnodeValueStream** in package DOM  
 for C, 3-66  
**XmDomGetNotationPubID** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-83  
**XmDomGetNotationSysID** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-83  
**XmDomGetOwnerDocument** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-67  
**XmDomGetOwnerElem** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-9  
**XmDomGetParentNode** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-67  
**XmDomGetPIData** in package DOM for C, 3-84  
**XmDomGetPITarget** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-84  
**XmDomGetPrevSibling** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-68  
**XmDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream** in package  
 DOM for C, 3-68  
**XmDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream** in  
 package DOM for C, 3-68  
**XmDomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream** in package  
 DOM for C, 3-69  
**XmDomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream** in  
 package DOM for C, 3-69  
**XmDomGetSchema** in package DOM for C, 3-28  
**XmDomGetSourceEntity** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-70  
**XmDomGetSourceLine** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-70  
**XmDomGetSourceLocation** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-70  
**XmDomGetTag** in package DOM for C, 3-41  
**XmDomHasAttr** in package DOM for C, 3-41  
**XmDomHasAttrNS** in package DOM for C, 3-41  
**XmDomHasAttrs** in package DOM for C, 3-71  
**XmDomHasChildNodes** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-71  
**XmDomImportNode** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-28  
**XmDomInsertBefore** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-71  
**XmDomInsertData** in package DOM for C, 3-13  
**XmDomIsSchemaBased** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-29  
**XmDomIterDetach** in package Traversal for  
 C, 10-5  
**XmDomIterNextNode** in package Traversal for  
 C, 10-5  
**XmDomIterPrevNode** in package Traversal for  
 C, 10-6  
**XmDomNormalize** in package DOM for C, 3-72  
**XmDomNumAttrs** in package DOM for C, 3-72  
**XmDomNumChildNodes** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-73  
**XmDomPrefixToURI** in package DOM for  
 C, 3-73  
**XmDomRangeClone** in package Range for C, 6-3  
**XmDomRangeCloneContents** in package Range  
 for C, 6-4  
**XmDomRangeCollapse** in package Range for  
 C, 6-4  
**XmDomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints** in  
 package Range for C, 6-5  
**XmDomRangeDeleteContents** in package Range  
 for C, 6-5  
**XmDomRangeDetach** in package Range for  
 C, 6-5  
**XmDomRangeExtractContents** in package Range  
 for C, 6-6  
**XmDomRangeGetCollapsed** in package Range for  
 C, 6-6  
**XmDomRangeGetCommonAncestor** in package  
 Range for C, 6-7

`XmldomRangeGetDetached` in package `Range` for  
    `C`, 6-7  
`XmldomRangeGetEndContainer` in package `Range`  
    for `C`, 6-7  
`XmldomRangeGetEndOffset` in package `Range` for  
    `C`, 6-8  
`XmldomRangeGetStartContainer` in package  
    `Range` for `C`, 6-8  
`XmldomRangeGetStartOffset` in package `Range`  
    for `C`, 6-9  
`XmldomRangeIsConsistent` in package `Range` for  
    `C`, 6-9  
`XmldomRangeSelectNode` in package `Range` for  
    `C`, 6-9  
`XmldomRangeSelectNodeContents` in package  
    `Range` for `C`, 6-10  
`XmldomRangeSetEnd` in package `Range` for  
    `C`, 6-10  
`XmldomRangeSetEndBefore` in package `Range` for  
    `C`, 6-11  
`XmldomRangeSetStart` in package `Range` for  
    `C`, 6-11  
`XmldomRangeSetStartAfter` in package `Range` for  
    `C`, 6-12  
`XmldomRangeSetStartBefore` in package `Range` for  
    `C`, 6-12  
`XmldomRemoveAttr` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-42  
`XmldomRemoveAttrNode` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-43  
`XmldomRemoveAttrNS` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-42  
`XmldomRemoveChild` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-74  
`XmldomRemoveNamedItem` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-50  
`XmldomRemoveNamedItemNS` in package `DOM`  
    for `C`, 3-51  
`XmldomRenameNode` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-74  
`XmldomRenameNodeNS` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-74  
`XmldomReplaceChild` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-75  
`XmldomReplaceData` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-14  
`XmldomSaveString` in package `DOM` for `C`, 3-29  
`XmldomSaveString2` in package `DOM` for `C`, 3-30  
`XmldomSetAttr` in package `DOM` for `C`, 3-43  
`XmldomSetAttrNode` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-44  
`XmldomSetAttrNodeNS` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-45  
`XmldomSetAttrNS` in package `DOM` for `C`, 3-44  
`XmldomSetAttrValue` in package `DOM` for `C`, 3-9  
`XmldomSetAttrValueStream` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-9  
`XmldomSetBaseURI` in package `DOM` for `C`, 3-30  
`XmldomSetCharData` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-14

`XmldomSetDefaultNS` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-76  
`XmldomSetDocOrder` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-31  
`XmldomSetDTD` in package `DOM` for `C`, 3-31  
`XmldomSetLastError` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-32  
`XmldomSetNamedItem` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-51  
`XmldomSetNamedItemNS` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-52  
`XmldomSetNodePrefix` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-76  
`XmldomSetNodeValue` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-76  
`XmldomSetnodeValueLen` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-77  
`XmldomSetnodeValueStream` in package `DOM`  
    for `C`, 3-77  
`XmldomSetP IData` in package `DOM` for `C`, 3-85  
`XmldomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream` in package  
    `DOM` for `C`, 3-78  
`XmldomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream` in  
    package `DOM` for `C`, 3-78  
`XmldomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream` in package  
    `DOM` for `C`, 3-79  
`XmldomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream` in  
    package `DOM` for `C`, 3-79  
`XmldomSplitText` in package `DOM` for `C`, 3-86  
`XmldomSubstringData` in package `DOM` for  
    `C`, 3-15  
`XmldomSync` in package `DOM` for `C`, 3-32  
`XmldomValidate` in package `DOM` for `C`, 3-79  
`XmldomWalkerFirstChild` in package `Traversal` for  
    `C`, 10-7  
`XmldomWalkerGetCurrentNode` in package  
    `Traversal` for `C`, 10-7  
`XmldomWalkerGetRoot` in package `Traversal` for  
    `C`, 10-8  
`XmldomWalkerLastChild` in package `Traversal` for  
    `C`, 10-8  
`XmldomWalkerNextNode` in package `Traversal`  
    for `C`, 10-9  
`XmldomWalkerNextSibling` in package `Traversal`  
    for `C`, 10-9  
`XmldomWalkerParentNode` in package `Traversal`  
    for `C`, 10-10  
`XmldomWalkerPrevNode` in package `Traversal`  
    for `C`, 10-10  
`XmldomWalkerPrevSibling` in package `Traversal`  
    for `C`, 10-11  
`XmldomWalkerSetCurrentNode` in package  
    `Traversal` for `C`, 10-11  
`XmldomWalkerSetRoot` in package `Traversal` for  
    `C`, 10-12  
`XmlevcleanPPCtx` package `Event` for `C`, 4-5  
`XmlevCreatePPCtx` package `Event` for `C`, 4-6  
`XmlevCreateSVCtx` package `Event` for `C`, 4-7  
`XmlevDestroyPPCtx` package `Event` for `C`, 4-8  
`XmlevDestroySVCtx` package `Event` for `C`, 4-8

**XmlEvGetAttrCount** in package Event for C, 4-9  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody** in package Event for C, 4-9  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0** in package Event for C, 4-9  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount** in package Event for C, 4-10  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName** in package Event for C, 4-10  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName0** in package Event for C, 4-10  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName** in package Event for C, 4-11  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0** in package Event for C, 4-11  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclName** in package Event for C, 4-11  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclName0** in package Event for C, 4-12  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix** in package Event for C, 4-12  
**XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0** in package Event for C, 4-13  
**XmlEvGetAttrID** in package Event for C, 4-13  
**XmlEvGetAttrLocalName** in package Event for C, 4-13  
**XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0** in package Event for C, 4-14  
**XmlEvGetAttrName** in package Event for C, 4-14  
**XmlEvGetAttrName0** in package Event for C, 4-14  
**XmlEvGetAttrPrefix** in package Event for C, 4-15  
**XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0** in package Event for C, 4-15  
**XmlEvGetAttrURI** in package Event for C, 4-16  
**XmlEvGetAttrURI0** in package Event for C, 4-16  
**XmlEvGetAttrUriID** in package Event for C, 4-16  
**XmlEvGetAttrValue** in package Event for C, 4-17  
**XmlEvGetAttrValue0** in package Event for C, 4-17  
**XmlEvGetElDeclContent** in package Event for C, 4-17  
**XmlEvGetElDeclContent0** in package Event for C, 4-18  
**XmlEvGetEncoding** in package Event for C, 4-18  
**XmlEvGetError** in package Event for C, 4-18  
**XmlEvGetLocalName** in package Event for C, 4-20  
**XmlEvGetLocalName0** in package Event for C, 4-20  
**XmlEvGetLocation** in package Event for C, 4-21  
**XmlEvGetName** in package Event for C, 4-19  
**XmlEvGetName0** in package Event for C, 4-19  
**XmlEvGetPERepl** in package Event for C, 4-23  
**XmlEvGetPERepl0** in package Event for C, 4-22, 4-23  
**XmlEvGetPIData** in package Event for C, 4-21  
**XmlEvGetPIData0** in package Event for C, 4-21  
**XmlEvGetPITarget** in package Event for C, 4-22  
**XmlEvGetPITarget0** in package Event for C, 4-22  
**XmlEvGetPrefix** in package Event for C, 4-23  
**XmlEvGetPrefix0** in package Event for C, 4-24  
**XmlEvGetPubId** in package Event for C, 4-24  
**XmlEvGetPubId0** in package Event for C, 4-25  
**XmlEvGetSysId** in package Event for C, 4-25  
**XmlEvGetSysId0** in package Event for C, 4-25  
**XmlEvGetTagID** in package Event for C, 4-26  
**XmlEvGetTagUriID** in package Event for C, 4-26  
**XmlEvGetText** in package Event for C, 4-26  
**XmlEvGetText0** in package Event for C, 4-27  
**XmlEvGetUENdata** in package Event for C, 4-28  
**XmlEvGetUENdata0** in package Event for C, 4-28  
**XmlEvGetURI** in package Event for C, 4-28  
**XmlEvGetURI0** in package Event for C, 4-29  
**XmlEvGetVersion** in package Event for C, 4-29  
**XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified** in package Event for C, 4-29  
**XmlEvIsStandalone** in package Event for C, 4-30  
**XmlEvLoadPPDoc** in package Event for C, 4-31  
**XmlEvNamespaceAttr** in package Event for C, 4-30  
**XmlEvNext** in package Event for C, 4-30  
**XmlEvSchemaValidate** in package Event for C, 4-31  
**XmlFreeDocument** in package XML for C, 11-7  
**XmlGetEncoding** in package XML for C, 11-8  
**XmlHasFeature** in package XML for C, 11-8  
**XmlHash** in package XmlDiff for C, 12-3  
**XmlIsSimple** in package XML for C, 11-9  
**XmlIsUnicode** in package XML for C, 11-9  
**XmlLoadDom** in package XML for C, 11-9  
**XmlLoadSax** in package XML for C, 11-11  
**XmlLoadSaxVA** in package XML for C, 11-11  
**XmlPatch** in package XmlDiff for C, 12-4  
**XmlSaveDom** in package XML for C, 11-12  
**XmlSaxAttributeDecl** in package SAX for C, 7-2  
**XmlSaxCDATA** in package SAX for C, 7-3  
**XmlSaxCharacters** in package SAX for C, 7-3  
**XmlSaxComment** in package SAX for C, 7-4  
**XmlSaxElementDecl** in package SAX for C, 7-4  
**XmlSaxEndDocument** in package SAX for C, 7-5  
**XmlSaxEndElement** in package SAX for C, 7-5  
**XmlSaxNotationDecl** in package SAX for C, 7-5  
**XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl** in package SAX for C, 7-6  
**XmlSaxPI** in package SAX for C, 7-6  
**XmlSaxStartDocument** in package SAX for C, 7-7  
**XmlSaxStartElement** in package SAX for C, 7-7  
**XmlSaxStartElementNS** in package SAX for C, 7-8  
**XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl** in package SAX for C, 7-8  
**XmlSaxWhitespace** in package SAX for C, 7-9  
**XmlSaxXmlDecl** in package SAX for C, 7-9  
**XmlSchemaClean** in package Schema for C, 8-2  
**XmlSchemaCreate** in package Schema for C, 8-2  
**XmlSchemaDestroy** in package Schema for C, 8-3  
**XmlSchemaErrorWhere** in package Schema for C, 8-3  
**XmlSchemaLoad** in package Schema for C, 8-4

**XmlSchemaLoadedList** in package Schema for C, 8-4  
**XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler** in package Schema for C, 8-5  
**XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions** in package Schema for C, 8-5  
**XmlSchemaTargetNamespace** in package Schema for C, 8-6  
**XmlSchemaUnload** in package Schema for C, 8-6  
**XmlSchemaValidate** in package Schema for C, 8-7  
**XmlSchemaVersion** in package Schema for C, 8-7  
**XmlSoapAddBodyElement** in package SOAP for C, 9-3  
**XmlSoapAddFaultReason** in package SOAP for C, 9-3  
**XmlSoapAddFaultSubDetail** in package SOAP for C, 9-4  
**XmlSoapAddHeaderElement** in package SOAP for C, 9-4  
**XmlSoapCall** in package SOAP for C, 9-5  
**XmlSoapCreateConnection** in package SOAP for C, 9-5  
**XmlSoapCreateCtx** in package SOAP for C, 9-6  
**XmlSoapCreateMsg** in package SOAP for C, 9-7  
**XmlSoapDestroyConnection** in package SOAP for C, 9-8  
**XmlSoapDestroyCtx** in package SOAP for C, 9-8  
**XmlSoapDestroyMsg** in package SOAP for C, 9-8  
**XmlSoapError** in package SOAP for C, 9-9  
**XmlSoapGetBody** in package SOAP for C, 9-9  
**XmlSoapGetBodyElement** in package SOAP for C, 9-10  
**XmlSoapGetEnvelope** in package SOAP for C, 9-10  
**XmlSoapGetFault** in package SOAP for C, 9-11  
**XmlSoapGetHeader** in package SOAP for C, 9-11  
**XmlSoapGetHeaderElement** in package SOAP for C, 9-12  
**XmlSoapGetMustUnderstand** in package SOAP for C, 9-12  
**XmlSoapGetReasonLang** in package SOAP for C, 9-13  
**XmlSoapGetReasonNum** in package SOAP for C, 9-13  
**XmlSoapGetRelay** in package SOAP for C, 9-14  
**XmlSoapGetRole** in package SOAP for C, 9-14  
**XmlSoapHasFault** in package SOAP for C, 9-15  
**XmlSoapSetFault** in package SOAP for C, 9-15  
**XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand** in package SOAP for C, 9-16  
**XmlSoapSetRelay** in package SOAP for C, 9-16  
**XmlSoapSetRole** in package SOAP for C, 9-17  
**XmlVersion** in package XML for C, 11-13  
**XmlXPathCreateCtx** in package XPath for C, 13-2  
**XmlXPathDestroyCtx** in package XPath for C, 13-2  
**XmlXPathEval** in package XPath for C, 13-3  
**XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean** in package XPath for C, 13-3  
**XmlXPathGetObjectFragment** in package XPath for C, 13-3  
**XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode** in package XPath for C, 13-4  
**XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum** in package XPath for C, 13-4  
**XmlXPathGetObjectNumber** in package XPath for C, 13-5  
**XmlXPathGetObjectString** in package XPath for C, 13-5  
**XmlXPathGetObjectType** in package XPath for C, 13-5  
**XmlXPathParse** in package XPath for C, 13-6  
**XmlXPointerEval** in package XPointer for C, 14-2  
**XmlXPtrLocGetNode** in package XPointer for C, 14-3  
**XmlXPtrLocGetPoint** in package XPointer for C, 14-3  
**XmlXPtrLocGetRange** in package XPointer for C, 14-3  
**XmlXPtrLocGetType** in package XPointer for C, 14-4  
**XmlXPtrLocSetFree** in package XPointer for C, 14-5  
**XmlXPtrLocSetGetItem** in package XPointer for C, 14-5  
**XmlXPtrLocSetGetLength** in package XPointer for C, 14-5  
**XmlXPtrLocToString** in package XPointer for C, 14-4  
**XmlXslCreate** in package XSLT for C, 15-2  
**XmlXslDestroy** in package XSLT for C, 15-3  
**XmlXslGetBaseURI** in package XSLT for C, 15-3  
**XmlXslGetOutput** in package XSLT for C, 15-3  
**XmlXslGetStylesheetDom** in package XSLT for C, 15-3  
**XmlXslGetTextParam** in package XSLT for C, 15-4  
**XmlXslProcess** in package XSLT for C, 15-4  
**XmlXslResetAllParams** in package XSLT for C, 15-5  
**XmlXslSetOutputDom** in package XSLT for C, 15-5  
**XmlXslSetOutputEncoding** in package XSLT for C, 15-5  
**XmlXslSetOutputMethod** in package XSLT for C, 15-6  
**XmlXslSetOutputSax** in package XSLT for C, 15-6  
**XmlXslSetOutputStream** in package XSLT for C, 15-6  
**XmlXslSetTextParam** in package XSLT for C, 15-7  
**XMLXVM\_DEBUG\_F** in package XSLTVM for C, 16-9  
**XmlXvmCompileBuffer** in package XSLTVM for C, 16-3  
**XmlXvmCompileDom** in package XSLTVM for C, 16-4  
**XmlXvmCompileFile** in package XSLTVM for C, 16-4  
**XmlXvmCompileURI** in package XSLTVM for

C, 16-5  
XmlXvmCompileXPath in package XSLTVM for C, 16-6  
XmlXvmCreate in package XSLTVM for C, 16-9  
XmlXvmCreateComp in package XSLTVM for C, 16-6  
XmlXvmDestroy in package XSLTVM for C, 16-10  
XmlXvmDestroyComp in package XSLTVM for C, 16-6  
XmlXvmEvaluateXPath in package XSLTVM for C, 16-10  
XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength in package XSLTVM for C, 16-7  
XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean in package XSLTVM for C, 16-10  
XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode in package XSLTVM for C, 16-11  
XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum in package XSLTVM for C, 16-11  
XmlXvmGetObjectNumber in package XSLTVM for C, 16-11  
XmlXvmGetObjectString in package XSLTVM for C, 16-12  
XmlXvmGetObjectType in package XSLTVM for C, 16-12  
XmlXvmGetOutputDom in package XSLTVM for C, 16-13  
XmlXvmResetParams in package XSLTVM for C, 16-13  
XmlXvmSetBaseURI in package XSLTVM for C, 16-13  
XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer in package XSLTVM for C, 16-14  
XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile in package XSLTVM for C, 16-14  
XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI in package XSLTVM for C, 16-14  
XmlXvmSetDebugFunc in package XSLTVM for C, 16-15  
XmlXvmSetOutputDom in package XSLTVM for C, 16-15  
XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding in package XSLTVM for C, 16-16  
XmlXvmSetOutputSax in package XSLTVM for C, 16-16  
XmlXvmSetOutputStream in package XSLTVM for C, 16-17  
XmlXvmSetTextParam in package XSLTVM for C, 16-17  
XmlXvmTransformBuffer in package XSLTVM for C, 16-17  
XmlXvmTransformDom in package XSLTVM for C, 16-18  
XmlXvmTransformFile in package XSLTVM for C, 16-18  
XmlXvmTransformURI in package XSLTVM for C, 16-19

## P

---

packages  
Callback for C, 2-1  
DOM for C, 3-1  
Event for C, 4-1  
Range for C, 6-1  
SAX for C, 7-1  
Schema for C, 8-1  
SOAP for C, 9-1  
Traversal for C, 10-1  
XML for C, 11-1  
XmlDiff for C, 12-1  
XPath for C, 13-1  
XPointer for C, 14-1  
XSLT for C, 15-1  
XSLTVM for C, 16-1

## R

---

Range package for C, 6-1

## S

---

SAX package for C, 7-1  
Schema package for C, 8-1  
SOAP package for C, 9-1

## T

---

Traversal package for C, 10-1

## X

---

XML package for C, 11-1  
XML\_ACCESS\_CLOSE\_F in package Callback package for C, 2-2  
XML\_ACCESS\_OPEN\_F in package Callback package for C, 2-2  
XML\_ACCESS\_READ\_F in package Callback package for C, 2-3  
XML\_ALLOC\_F in package Callback package for C, 2-3  
XML\_ERRMSG\_F in package Callback package for C, 2-4  
XML\_FREE\_F in package Callback package for C, 2-4  
XML\_STREAM\_CLOSE\_F in package Callback package for C, 2-5  
XML\_STREAM\_OPEN\_F in package Callback package for C, 2-5  
XML\_STREAM\_READ\_F in package Callback package for C, 2-6  
XML\_STREAM\_WRITE\_F in package Callback package for C, 2-6  
XmlAccess in package XML package for C, 11-2  
XmlCreate in package XML package for C, 11-3  
XmlCreateDocument in package XML package for C, 11-5  
XmlCreateDTD in package XML package for C, 11-5  
XmlDestroy in package XML package for C, 11-6

XmlDiff in package XML package for C, 11-6  
XmlDiff in package XmlDiff package for C, 12-2  
XmlDiff package for C, 12-1  
XMLDOM\_ACCEPT\_NODE\_F in package Traversal package for C, 10-4  
XmlDomAppendChild in package DOM package for C, 3-55  
XmlDomAppendData in package DOM package for C, 3-11  
XmlDomCleanNode in package DOM package for C, 3-55  
XmlDomCloneNode in package DOM package for C, 3-55  
XmlDomCreateAttr in package DOM package for C, 3-17  
XmlDomCreateAttrNS in package DOM package for C, 3-17  
XmlDomCreateCDATA in package DOM package for C, 3-18  
XmlDomCreateComment in package DOM package for C, 3-19  
XmlDomCreateElem in package DOM package for C, 3-19  
XmlDomCreateElemNS in package DOM package for C, 3-20  
XmlDomCreateEntityRef in package DOM package for C, 3-21  
XmlDomCreateFragment in package DOM package for C, 3-21  
XmlDomCreateNodeIter in package Traversal package for C, 10-2  
XmlDomCreatePI in package DOM package for C, 3-22  
XmlDomCreateRange in package Range package for C, 6-2  
XmlDomCreateText in package DOM package for C, 3-22  
XmlDomCreateTreeWalker in package Traversal package for C, 10-3  
XmlDomDeleteData in package DOM package for C, 3-12  
XmlDomFreeNode in package DOM package for C, 3-56  
XmlDomFreeNodeList in package DOM package for C, 3-81  
XmlDomFreeString in package DOM package for C, 3-23  
XmlDomGetAttr in package DOM package for C, 3-36  
XmlDomGetAttrLocal in package DOM package for C, 3-2  
XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen in package DOM package for C, 3-3  
XmlDomGetAttrName in package DOM package for C, 3-3  
XmlDomGetAttrNameLen in package DOM package for C, 3-4  
XmlDomGetAttrNode in package DOM package for C, 3-37  
XmlDomGetAttrNodeNS in package DOM package for C, 3-38  
XmlDomGetAttrNS in package DOM package for C, 3-37  
XmlDomGetAttrPrefix in package DOM package for C, 3-5  
XmlDomGetAttrs in package DOM package for C, 3-56  
XmlDomGetAttrSpecified in package DOM package for C, 3-5  
XmlDomGetAttrURI in package DOM package for C, 3-6  
XmlDomGetAttrURILen in package DOM package for C, 3-6  
XmlDomGetAttrValue in package DOM package for C, 3-7  
XmlDomGetAttrValueLen in package DOM package for C, 3-7  
XmlDomGetAttrValueStream in package DOM package for C, 3-8  
XmlDomGetBaseURI in package DOM package for C, 3-23  
XmlDomGetCharData in package DOM package for C, 3-12  
XmlDomGetCharDataLength in package DOM package for C, 3-13  
XmlDomGetchildNodes in package DOM package for C, 3-57  
XmlDomGetChildrenByTag in package DOM package for C, 3-38  
XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS in package DOM package for C, 3-39  
XmlDomGetDecl in package DOM package for C, 3-24  
XmlDomGetDefaultNS in package DOM package for C, 3-57  
XmlDomGetDocElem in package DOM package for C, 3-25  
XmlDomGetDocElemByID in package DOM package for C, 3-25  
XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag in package DOM package for C, 3-26  
XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS in package DOM package for C, 3-27  
XmlDomGetDTD in package DOM package for C, 3-24  
XmlDomGetDTDEntities in package DOM package for C, 3-33  
XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset in package DOM package for C, 3-33  
XmlDomGetDTDName in package DOM package for C, 3-34  
XmlDomGetDTDNotations in package DOM package for C, 3-34  
XmlDomGetDTDPubID in package DOM package for C, 3-35  
XmlDomGetDTDSysID in package DOM package for C, 3-35  
XmlDomGetElemsByTag in package DOM package for C, 3-39  
XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS in package DOM

package for C, 3-40  
XmlDomGetEntityNotation in package DOM package for C, 3-46  
XmlDomGetEntityPubID in package DOM package for C, 3-46  
XmlDomGetEntitySysID in package DOM package for C, 3-47  
XmlDomGetEntityType in package DOM package for C, 3-47  
XmlDomGetFirstChild in package DOM package for C, 3-58  
XmlDomGetFirstPfnsPair in package DOM package for C, 3-58  
XmlDomGetLastChild in package DOM package for C, 3-59  
XmlDomGetLastError in package DOM package for C, 3-27  
XmlDomGetNamedItem in package DOM package for C, 3-48  
XmlDomGetNamedItemNS in package DOM package for C, 3-49  
XmlDomGetNextPfnsPair in package DOM package for C, 3-59  
XmlDomGetNextSibling in package DOM package for C, 3-60  
XmlDomGetNodeListItem in package DOM package for C, 3-81  
XmlDomGetNodeListLength in package DOM package for C, 3-82  
XmlDomGetNodeLocal in package DOM package for C, 3-60  
XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen in package DOM package for C, 3-60  
XmlDomGetNodeMapItem in package DOM package for C, 3-49  
XmlDomGetNodeMapLength in package DOM package for C, 3-50  
XmlDomGetnodeName in package DOM package for C, 3-61  
XmlDomGetnodeNameLen in package DOM package for C, 3-62  
XmlDomGetNodePrefix in package DOM package for C, 3-63  
XmlDomGetNodeType in package DOM package for C, 3-63  
XmlDomGetNodeURI in package DOM package for C, 3-64  
XmlDomGetNodeURILen in package DOM package for C, 3-64  
XmlDomGetnodeValue in package DOM package for C, 3-65  
XmlDomGetnodeValueLen in package DOM package for C, 3-66  
XmlDomGetnodeValueStream in package DOM package for C, 3-66  
XmlDomGetNotationPubID in package DOM package for C, 3-83  
XmlDomGetNotationSysID in package DOM package for C, 3-83  
XmlDomGetOwnerDocument in package DOM package for C, 3-67  
XmlDomGetOwnerElem in package DOM package for C, 3-9  
XmlDomGetParentNode in package DOM package for C, 3-67  
XmlDomGetP IData in package DOM package for C, 3-84  
XmlDomGetPITarget in package DOM package for C, 3-84  
XmlDomGetPrevSibling in package DOM package for C, 3-68  
XmlDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream in package DOM package for C, 3-68  
XmlDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream in package DOM package for C, 3-68  
XmlDomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream in package DOM package for C, 3-69  
XmlDomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream in package DOM package for C, 3-69  
XmlDomGetSchema in package DOM package for C, 3-28  
XmlDomGetSourceEntity in package DOM package for C, 3-70  
XmlDomGetSourceLine in package DOM package for C, 3-70  
XmlDomGetSourceLocation in package DOM package for C, 3-70  
XmlDomGetTag in package DOM package for C, 3-41  
XmlDomHasAttr in package DOM package for C, 3-41  
XmlDomHasAttrNS in package DOM package for C, 3-41  
XmlDomHasAttrs in package DOM package for C, 3-71  
XmlDomHasChildNodes in package DOM package for C, 3-71  
XmlDomImportNode in package DOM package for C, 3-28  
XmlDomInsertBefore in package DOM package for C, 3-71  
XmlDomInsertData in package DOM package for C, 3-13  
XmlDomIsSchemaBased in package DOM package for C, 3-29  
XmlDomIterDetach in package Traversal package for C, 10-5  
XmlDomIterNextNode in package Traversal package for C, 10-5  
XmlDomIterPrevNode in package Traversal package for C, 10-6  
XmlDomNormalize in package DOM package for C, 3-72  
XmlDomNumAttrs in package DOM package for C, 3-72  
XmlDomNumChildNodes in package DOM package for C, 3-73  
XmlDomPrefixToURI in package DOM package for C, 3-73  
XmlDomRangeClone in package Range package for C, 3-73

C, 6-3  
XmlDomRangeCloneContents in package Range package for C, 6-4  
XmlDomRangeCollapse in package Range package for C, 6-4  
XmlDomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints in package Range package for C, 6-5  
XmlDomRangeDeleteContents in package Range package for C, 6-5  
XmlDomRangeDetach in package Range package for C, 6-5  
XmlDomRangeExtractContents in package Range package for C, 6-6  
XmlDomRangeGetCollapsed in package Range package for C, 6-6  
XmlDomRangeGetCommonAncestor in package Range package for C, 6-7  
XmlDomRangeGetDetached in package Range package for C, 6-7  
XmlDomRangeGetEndContainer in package Range package for C, 6-7  
XmlDomRangeGetEndOffset in package Range package for C, 6-8  
XmlDomRangeGetStartContainer in package Range package for C, 6-8  
XmlDomRangeGetStartOffset in package Range package for C, 6-9  
XmlDomRangeIsConsistent in package Range package for C, 6-9  
XmlDomRangeSelectNode in package Range package for C, 6-9  
XmlDomRangeSelectNodeContents in package Range package for C, 6-10  
XmlDomRangeSetEnd in package Range package for C, 6-10  
XmlDomRangeSetEndBefore in package Range package for C, 6-11  
XmlDomRangeSetStart in package Range package for C, 6-11  
XmlDomRangeSetStartAfter in package Range package for C, 6-12  
XmlDomRangeSetStartBefore in package Range package for C, 6-12  
XmlDomRemoveAttr in package DOM package for C, 3-42  
XmlDomRemoveAttrNode in package DOM package for C, 3-43  
XmlDomRemoveAttrNS in package DOM package for C, 3-42  
XmlDomRemoveChild in package DOM package for C, 3-74  
XmlDomRemoveNamedItem in package DOM package for C, 3-50  
XmlDomRemoveNamedItemNS in package DOM package for C, 3-51  
XmlDomRenameNode in package DOM package for C, 3-74  
XmlDomRenameNodeNS in package DOM package for C, 3-74  
XmlDomReplaceChild in package DOM package for C, 3-75  
XmlDomReplaceData in package DOM package for C, 3-14  
XmlDomSaveString in package DOM package for C, 3-29  
XmlDomSaveString2 in package DOM package for C, 3-30  
XmlDomSetAttr in package DOM package for C, 3-43  
XmlDomSetAttrNode in package DOM package for C, 3-44  
XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS in package DOM package for C, 3-45  
XmlDomSetAttrNS in package DOM package for C, 3-44  
XmlDomSetAttributeValue in package DOM package for C, 3-9  
XmlDomSetAttributeValueStream in package DOM package for C, 3-9  
XmlDomSetBaseURI in package DOM package for C, 3-30  
XmlDomSetCharData in package DOM package for C, 3-14  
XmlDomSetDefaultNS in package DOM package for C, 3-76  
XmlDomSetDocOrder in package DOM package for C, 3-31  
XmlDomSetDTD in package DOM package for C, 3-31  
XmlDomSetLastError in package DOM package for C, 3-32  
XmlDomSetNamedItem in package DOM package for C, 3-51  
XmlDomSetNamedItemNS in package DOM package for C, 3-52  
XmlDomSetNodePrefix in package DOM package for C, 3-76  
XmlDomSetNodeValue in package DOM package for C, 3-76  
XmlDomSetnodeValueLen in package DOM package for C, 3-77  
XmlDomSetnodeValueStream in package DOM package for C, 3-77  
XmlDomSetP IData in package DOM package for C, 3-85  
XmlDomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream in package DOM package for C, 3-78  
XmlDomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream in package DOM package for C, 3-78  
XmlDomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream in package DOM package for C, 3-79  
XmlDomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream in package DOM package for C, 3-79  
XmlDomSplitText in package DOM package for C, 3-86  
XmlDomSubstringData in package DOM package for C, 3-15  
XmlDomSync in package DOM package for C, 3-32  
XmlDomValidate in package DOM package for C, 3-79

XmlDomWalkerFirstChild in package Traversal  
package for C, 10-7  
XmlDomWalkerGetCurrentNode in package  
Traversal package for C, 10-7  
XmlDomWalkerGetRoot in package Traversal  
package for C, 10-8  
XmlDomWalkerLastChild in package Traversal  
package for C, 10-8  
XmlDomWalkerNextNode in package Traversal  
package for C, 10-9  
XmlDomWalkerNextSibling in package Traversal  
package for C, 10-9  
XmlDomWalkerParentNode in package Traversal  
package for C, 10-10  
XmlDomWalkerPrevNode in package Traversal  
package for C, 10-10  
XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling in package Traversal  
package for C, 10-11  
XmlDomWalkerSetCurrentNode in package Traversal  
package for C, 10-11  
XmlDomWalkerSetRoot in package Traversal package  
for C, 10-12  
XmlEvCleanPPCtx in package Event package for  
C, 4-5  
XmlEvCreatePPCtx in package Event package for  
C, 4-6  
XmlEvCreateSVCtx in package Event package for  
C, 4-7  
XmlEvDestroyPPCtx in package Event package for  
C, 4-8  
XmlEvDestroySVCtx in package Event package for  
C, 4-8  
XmlEvGetAttrCount in package Event package for  
C, 4-9  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody in package Event package for  
C, 4-9  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0 in package Event package  
for C, 4-9  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount in package Event package  
for C, 4-10  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclEIName in package Event package  
for C, 4-10  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclEIName0 in package Event  
package for C, 4-10  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName in package Event  
package for C, 4-11  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0 in package Event  
package for C, 4-11  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclName in package Event package  
for C, 4-11  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclName0 in package Event package  
for C, 4-12  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix in package Event package  
for C, 4-12  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0 in package Event package  
for C, 4-13  
XmlEvGetAttrID in package Event package for  
C, 4-13  
XmlEvGetAttrLocalName in package Event package  
for C, 4-13  
XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0 in package Event package  
for C, 4-14  
XmlEvGetAttrName in package Event package for  
C, 4-14  
XmlEvGetAttrName0 in package Event package for  
C, 4-14  
XmlEvGetAttrPrefix in package Event package for  
C, 4-15  
XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0 in package Event package for  
C, 4-15  
XmlEvGetAttrURI in package Event package for  
C, 4-16  
XmlEvGetAttrURI0 in package Event package for  
C, 4-16  
XmlEvGetAttrUriID in package Event package for  
C, 4-16  
XmlEvGetAttrValue in package Event package for  
C, 4-17  
XmlEvGetAttrValue0 in package Event package for  
C, 4-17  
XmlEvGetElDeclContent in package Event package  
for C, 4-17  
XmlEvGetElDeclContent0 in package Event package  
for C, 4-18  
XmlEvGetEncoding in package Event package for  
C, 4-18  
XmlEvGetError in package Event package for  
C, 4-18  
XmlEvGetLocalName in package Event package for  
C, 4-20  
XmlEvGetLocalName0 in package Event package for  
C, 4-20  
XmlEvGetLocation in package Event package for  
C, 4-21  
XmlEvGetName in package Event package for  
C, 4-19  
XmlEvGetName0 in package Event package for  
C, 4-19  
XmlEvGetPEisGen in package Event package for  
C, 4-22  
XmlEvGetPERepl in package Event package for  
C, 4-23  
XmlEvGetPERepl0 in package Event package for  
C, 4-23  
XmlEvGetPIData in package Event package for  
C, 4-21  
XmlEvGetPIData0 in package Event package for  
C, 4-21  
XmlEvGetPITarget in package Event package for  
C, 4-22  
XmlEvGetPITarget0 in package Event package for  
C, 4-22  
XmlEvGetPrefix in package Event package for  
C, 4-23  
XmlEvGetPrefix0 in package Event package for  
C, 4-24  
XmlEvGetPubId in package Event package for  
C, 4-24  
XmlEvGetPubId0 in package Event package for  
C, 4-25

XmlEvGetSysId in package Event package for C, 4-25  
XmlEvGetSysId0 in package Event package for C, 4-25  
XmlEvGetTagID in package Event package for C, 4-26  
XmlEvGetTagUriID in package Event package for C, 4-26  
XmlEvGetText in package Event package for C, 4-26  
XmlEvGetText0 in package Event package for C, 4-27  
XmlEvGetUENdata in package Event package for C, 4-28  
XmlEvGetUENdata0 in package Event package for C, 4-28  
XmlEvGetURI in package Event package for C, 4-28  
XmlEvGetURI0 in package Event package for C, 4-29  
XmlEvGetVersion in package Event package for C, 4-29  
XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified in package Event package for C, 4-29  
XmlEvIsStandalone in package Event package for C, 4-30  
XmlEvLoadPPDoc in package Event package for C, 4-31  
XmlEvNamespaceAttr in package Event package for C, 4-30  
XmlEvNext in package Event package for C, 4-30  
XmlEvNextTag in package Event package for C, 4-31  
XmlEvSchemaValidate in package Event package for C, 4-31  
XmlFreeDocument in package XML package for C, 11-7  
XmlGetEncoding in package XML package for C, 11-8  
XmlHasFeature in package XML package for C, 11-8  
XmlHash in package XPath package for C, 12-3  
XmlIsSimple in package XML package for C, 11-9  
XmlIsUnicode in package XML package for C, 11-9  
XmlLoadDom in package XML package for C, 11-9  
XmlLoadSax in package XML package for C, 11-11  
XmlLoadSaxVA in package XML package for C, 11-11  
XmlPatch in package XmlDiff package for C, 12-4  
XmlSaveDom in package XML package for C, 11-12  
XmlSaxAttributeDecl in package SAX package for C, 7-2  
XmlSaxCDATA in package SAX package for C, 7-3  
XmlSaxCharacters in package SAX package for C, 7-3  
XmlSaxComment in package SAX package for C, 7-4  
XmlSaxElementDecl in package SAX package for C, 7-4  
XmlSaxEndDocument in package SAX package for C, 7-5  
XmlSaxEndElement in package SAX package for C, 7-5  
XmlSaxNotationDecl in package SAX package for C, 7-5  
C, 7-5  
XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl in package SAX package for C, 7-6  
XmlSaxPI in package SAX package for C, 7-6  
XmlSaxStartDocument in package SAX package for C, 7-7  
XmlSaxStartElement in package SAX package for C, 7-7  
XmlSaxStartElementNS in package SAX package for C, 7-8  
XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl in package SAX package for C, 7-8  
XmlSaxWhitespace in package SAX package for C, 7-9  
XmlSaxXmlDecl in package SAX package for C, 7-9  
XmlSchemaClean in package Schema package for C, 8-2  
XmlSchemaCreate in package Schema package for C, 8-2  
XmlSchemaDestroy in package Schema package for C, 8-3  
XmlSchemaErrorWhere in package Schema package for C, 8-3  
XmlSchemaLoad in package Schema package for C, 8-4  
XmlSchemaLoadedList in package Schema package for C, 8-4  
XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler in package Schema package for C, 8-5  
XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions in package Schema package for C, 8-5  
XmlSchemaTargetNamespace in package Schema package for C, 8-6  
XmlSchemaUnload in package Schema package for C, 8-6  
XmlSchemaValidate in package Schema package for C, 8-7  
XmlSchemaVersion in package Schema package for C, 8-7  
XmlSoapAddBodyElement in package SOAP package for C, 9-3  
XmlSoapAddFaultReason in package SOAP package for C, 9-3  
XmlSoapAddFaultSubDetail in package SOAP package for C, 9-4  
XmlSoapAddHeaderElement in package SOAP package for C, 9-4  
XmlSoapCall in package SOAP package for C, 9-5  
XmlSoapCreateConnection in package SOAP package for C, 9-5  
XmlSoapCreateCtx in package SOAP package for C, 9-6  
XmlSoapCreateMsg in package SOAP package for C, 9-7  
XmlSoapDestroyConnection in package SOAP package for C, 9-8  
XmlSoapDestroyCtx in package SOAP package for C, 9-8  
XmlSoapDestroyMsg in package SOAP package for C, 9-8

XmlSoapError in package SOAP package for C, 9-9  
    XmlSoapGetBody in package SOAP package for C, 9-9  
    XmlSoapGetBodyElement in package SOAP package for C, 9-10  
    XmlSoapGetEnvelope in package SOAP package for C, 9-10  
    XmlSoapGetFault in package SOAP package for C, 9-11  
    XmlSoapGetHeader in package SOAP package for C, 9-11  
    XmlSoapGetHeaderElement in package SOAP package for C, 9-12  
    XmlSoapGetMustUnderstand in package SOAP package for C, 9-12  
    XmlSoapGetReasonLang in package SOAP package for C, 9-13  
    XmlSoapGetReasonNum in package SOAP package for C, 9-13  
    XmlSoapGetRelay in package SOAP package for C, 9-14  
    XmlSoapGetRole in package SOAP package for C, 9-14  
    XmlSoapHasFault in package SOAP package for C, 9-15  
    XmlSoapSetFault in package SOAP package for C, 9-15  
    XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand in package SOAP package for C, 9-16  
    XmlSoapSetRelay in package SOAP package for C, 9-16  
    XmlSoapSetRole in package SOAP package for C, 9-17  
    XmlVersion in package XML package for C, 11-13  
    XmlXPathCreateCtx in package XPath package for C, 13-2  
    XmlXPathDestroyCtx in package XPath package for C, 13-2  
    XmlXPathEval in package XPath package for C, 13-3  
    XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean in package XPath package for C, 13-3  
    XmlXPathGetObjectFragment in package XPath package for C, 13-3  
    XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode in package XPath package for C, 13-4  
    XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum in package XPath package for C, 13-4  
    XmlXPathGetObjectNumber in package XPath package for C, 13-5  
    XmlXPathGetObjectString in package XPath package for C, 13-5  
    XmlXPathGetObjectType in package XPath package for C, 13-5  
    XmlXPathParse in package XPath package for C, 13-6  
    XmlXPointerEval in package XPointer package for C, 14-2  
    XmlXPtrLocGetNode in package XPointer package for C, 14-3  
    XmlXPtrLocGetPoint in package XPointer package for C, 14-3  
    XmlXPtrLocGetRange in package XPointer package for C, 14-3  
    XmlXPtrLocGetType in package XPointer package for C, 14-4  
    XmlXPtrLocSetFree in package XPointer package for C, 14-5  
    XmlXPtrLocSetGetItem in package XPointer package for C, 14-5  
    XmlXPtrLocSetGetLength in package XPointer package for C, 14-5  
    XmlXPtrLocToString in package XPointer package for C, 14-4  
    XmlXslCreate in package XSLT package for C, 15-2  
    XmlXslDestroy in package XSLT package for C, 15-3  
    XmlXslGetBaseURI in package XSLT package for C, 15-3  
    XmlXslGetOutput in package XSLT package for C, 15-3  
    XmlXslGetStylesheetDom in package XSLT package for C, 15-3  
    XmlXslGetTextParam in package XSLT package for C, 15-4  
    XmlXslProcess in package XSLT package for C, 15-4  
    XmlXslResetAllParams in package XSLT package for C, 15-5  
    XmlXslSetOutputDom in package XSLT package for C, 15-5  
    XmlXslSetOutputEncoding in package XSLT package for C, 15-5  
    XmlXslSetOutputMethod in package XSLT package for C, 15-6  
    XmlXslSetOutputSax in package XSLT package for C, 15-6  
    XmlXslSetOutputStream in package XSLT package for C, 15-6  
    XmlXslSetTextParam in package XSLT package for C, 15-7  
    XMLXVM\_DEBUG\_F in package XSLTVM package for C, 16-9  
    XmlXvmCompileBuffer in package XSLTVM package for C, 16-3  
    XmlXvmCompileDom in package XSLTVM package for C, 16-4  
    XmlXvmCompileFile in package XSLTVM package for C, 16-4  
    XmlXvmCompileURI in package XSLTVM package for C, 16-5  
    XmlXvmCompileXPath in package XSLTVM package for C, 16-6  
    XmlXvmCreate in package XSLTVM package for C, 16-9  
    XmlXvmCreateComp in package XSLTVM package for C, 16-6  
    XmlXvmDestroy in package XSLTVM package for C, 16-10  
    XmlXvmDestroyComp in package XSLTVM package for C, 16-6  
    XmlXvmEvaluateXPath in package XSLTVM package for C, 16-10

XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-7  
XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-10  
XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-11  
XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-11  
XmlXvmGetObjectNumber in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-11  
XmlXvmGetObjectString in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-12  
XmlXvmGetObjectType in package XSLTVM package  
    for C, 16-12  
XmlXvmGetOutputDom in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-13  
XmlXvmResetParams in package XSLTVM package  
    for C, 16-13  
XmlXvmSetBaseURI in package XSLTVM package for  
    C, 16-13  
XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-14  
XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-14  
XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-14  
XmlXvmSetDebugFunc in package XSLTVM package  
    for C, 16-15  
XmlXvmSetOutputDom in package XSLTVM package  
    for C, 16-15  
XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-16  
XmlXvmSetOutputSax in package XSLTVM package  
    for C, 16-16  
XmlXvmSetOutputStream in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-17  
XmlXvmSetTextParam in package XSLTVM package  
    for C, 16-17  
XmlXvmTransformBuffer in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-17  
XmlXvmTransformDom in package XSLTVM  
    package for C, 16-18  
XmlXvmTransformFile in package XSLTVM package  
    for C, 16-18  
XmlXvmTransformURI in package XSLTVM package  
    for C, 16-19  
XPath package for C, 13-1  
XPointer package for C, 14-1  
XSLT package for C, 15-1  
XSLTVM package for C, 16-1